This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Clarendon Press Series

A LATIN GRAMMAR

ALLEN

London

MACMILLAN AND CO.

PUBLISHERS TO THE UNIVERSITY OF

Oxford

Clarendon Press Series

AN ELEMENTARY

LATIN GRAMMAR

BY

JOHN BARROW ALLEN, M.A.

LATE SCHOLAR OF NEW COLLEGE, OXFORD

Oxford

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

M DCCC LXXIV

[All rights reserved]

PREFACE.

THIS Grammar is intended to give such information as is necessary for starting a learner in Latin. The troublesome nomenclature common to many School Grammars is as far as possible avoided; and a Short Catechism of Syntax takes the place of the usual Latin Rules.

In the treatment of Latin Accidence the beaten tracks pointed out by immemorial usage have been generally adhered to. The principal change is the subdivision of the Perfect into two separate Tenses, conformably to its twofold usage, (*a*) as a Present Past, (*b*) as a Simple Past. This alteration will compel every boy who meets with a Perfect to stop, if only as part of his parsing lesson, and reflect which Tense is meant. It also enables us to group the Tenses in the paradigm under the heads of Primary and Historic, a distinction important for boys to remember.

The principle of teaching by frequent repetition is adhered to throughout. A special aim of the work has been to impart a practical acquaintance with Latin Syntax by means of classified examples rather than a multitude of rules. All or nearly all the possible meanings of each Tense are given once at least with the paradigm of every Verb. To each Conjugation notes are appended explanatory of certain difficulties; among them are included short rules for the

translation of the Accusative and Infinitive, and Ablative Absolute.

The Author's best thanks are due to his friends, Henry St. John Reade, Head Master of the Godolphin School, Hammersmith, and Michael Seymour Forster, Head Master of Oswestry Grammar School, who have revised the proof sheets and offered many valuable suggestions. He has also to express his obligations to many of the School Manuals now in use, to which he is indebted for hints on several points of detail. A few rules have been quoted *verbatim*, and acknowledged in their proper place.

Corrections and suggestions of improvements in the work will be thankfully received.

BIRMINGHAM,
June 1874.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Alphabet and Parts of Speech.	1
The Noun	2
Substantives	4
The First Declension	4
The Second Declension	5
The Third Declension	6
The Fourth Declension	8
The Fifth Declension	9
Adjectives	9
Comparison of Adjectives	13
Pronouns	16
The Verb	18
The Verb 'Sum'	20
First Conjugation, Active Voice	26
Second Conjugation, Active Voice	32
Third Conjugation, Active Voice	38
Fourth Conjugation, Active Voice	44
First Conjugation, Passive Voice	50
Second Conjugation, Passive Voice	56
Third Conjugation, Passive Voice	62
Fourth Conjugation, Passive Voice	68
Conjugation of a Deponent Verb	74
Conjugation of the Anomalous Verbs	80
Interrogative Conjugation	86
Notes on the Conjugations	87
Defective and other Verbs	88
Particles	91
Catechism of Latin Syntax	94
Examples of the Rules of Latin Syntax	108
APPENDIX—	
A. Table of Verbs	129
B. Rules of Gender	140

PAGE

C. Notes on the Declensions 144
D. Numeral Adjectives and Adverbs 149
E. Table of Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns . 152
F. Terminations of Derived Nouns 153
G. Note on the Infinitive Mood 157
H. Note on the Latin Participle 160
I. Note on the Ablative Absolute 162
J. The Roman Calendar 163
K. Pronunciation of Latin 165
L. Explanation of Grammatical Terms 166
M. Rules for Parsing and Analysis 171
N. Vocabulary 183

LATIN GRAMMAR.

ALPHABET AND PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 1. **Alphabet.** The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English, without W. For the pronunciation, see Appendix, p. 165.

§ 2. **Divisions of Letters.** The letters are divided into

(1.) Vowels: a, e, i, o, u, y.

(2.) Consonants: the remaining letters.

§ 3. **Diphthongs.** The diphthongs are, ae (æ), oe (œ), and au[1].

§ 4. **Quantity of Syllables.** Syllables in Latin are always said to have a certain *quantity*,—that is, they are either long, short, or doubtful. The sign ¯ indicates a long, ˘ a short, and ˘̄ a doubtful syllable.

§ 5. **Parts of Speech.** There are eight Parts of Speech, namely, the Noun-Substantive, Noun-Adjective, Pro-noun, Verb, Ad-verb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection.

The Noun-Substantive is the name of any *thing*, as, magister, *a master*.

The Noun-Adjective expresses a *quality*, as, bonus, *good*.

The Pro-noun is used instead of a Substantive or Adjective, as, ille, *he;* meus, *my*.

[1] ei, eu, and ui are found as diphthongs in Interjections, as hei, heu; and in a few other words, as neuter, huic, cui, etc.

The Verb expresses an *action*, as, amo, *I love;* or a *condition*, as, amor, *I am loved.*

The Ad-verb modifies the meaning of a Verb, Adjective, or Participle[1], as *bene* scribit, *he writes well; longè* nobilissimus, *by far the noblest; vix* adultus, *scarcely grown up.*

The Preposition is used with Nouns, to express their relation to each other, as lupus *inter* oves, *a wolf among sheep.*

The Conjunction connects words or sentences together, as, et, *and.*

The Interjection is an exclamation, as, heu, *alas!*

§ 6. **Another Division.** These eight Parts of Speech are sometimes included under three heads, namely,

(1.) The Noun, including Noun-Substantive, Noun-Adjective, and Pronoun.

(2.) The Verb.

(3.) The Particle, including Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection.

§ 7. **Absence of the Article.** There is no Article, *a, an*, or *the*, in Latin. Thus bellum may mean *war, a war*, or *the war.*

THE NOUN.

§ 8. **Flexion.** Many Prepositions, as *of, for, from, by*, may be expressed in Latin not by a separate word, as in English, but by altering the last syllable of the Noun. Thus, *a table* is mens-**a**, *of a table* is mens-**ae**. Differences of Number and Gender are also expressed by terminations.

These changes made at the end of a Noun in order to vary its meaning are called its Flexion or Inflexion.

[1] Or even of a Substantive, as *admodum* puella, *quite a girl.* One *Adverb may also* modify another, as *satis* diu, *long enough.*

§ 9. **Stem.** The Stem of a Noun is that part of the word to which the flexional changes are added.

§ 10. **Declension.** Substantives have five different kinds of Flexion, which are called the five Declensions.

§ 11. **Number.** There are two Numbers, the Singular, which speaks of one; the Plural, which speaks of more than one.

§ 12. **Gender.** There are three Genders, the Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

§ 13. **Cases.** There are six Cases, the Nominative, Vocative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative, and Ablative.

The Nominative Case stands as Subject to the Verb, as, *magister* docet, *the master teaches.*

The Vocative is the Case of one addressed, as, amice, *O friend.*

The Accusative stands as Object to the Verb, or is governed by a Preposition, as, *puerum* docuit, *he taught the boy;* eo ad *magistrum, I go to the master.*

The Genitive is known by the sign *of*, or the apostrophe *s*, as, muri, *of a wall;* domini, *a lord's*, or *of a lord*[1].

The Dative is known by the signs *to* or *for*, as, domino, *to* or *for a lord.*

The Ablative is known by the signs *in*, *with*, *from*, or *by*, and is often governed by Prepositions, as, manu, *in, with, from*, or *by, a hand;* e portu navigo, *I sail from the harbour.* Also the word *of*, and *than* after a Comparative Adjective, are sometimes signs of the Ablative Case.

§ 14. **Direct and Oblique Cases.** The Nominative is called the Direct Case, the others the Oblique Cases.

[1] The apostrophe *s* is more commonly used of *animate* things than of *inanimate*: we say 'John's father,' 'a cow's horn;' but 'the heat *of* the fire,' 'the waves *of* the sea,' etc.

SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 15. **The five Declensions.** The five Declensions of Substantives are known by the endings of their Genitive Case Singular.

The first Declension has Gen. Sing. in **-ae**.
The second Declension has Gen. Sing. in **-i**.
The third Declension has Gen. Sing. in **-is**.
The fourth Declension has Gen. Sing. in **-ūs**.
The fifth Declension has Gen. Sing. in **-ei**.

§ 16. THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Nominative. The Nominative Case ends in **-a**.

Gender. Feminine; except a few names of men, as, Publicola, *Publicola*, or designations of men, as, poeta, *a poet*, which are masculine.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	Mensă, *a table.*	Mens-**ae**, *tables.*
Voc.	Mens-**a**, *O table.*	Mens-**ae**, *O tables.*
Acc.	Mens-**am**, *a table.*	Mens-**as**, *tables.*
Gen.	Mens-**ae**, *of a table.*	Mens-**arum**, *of tables.*
Dat.	Mens-**ae**, *to*, or *for a table.*	Mens-**is**, *to* or *for tables.*
Abl.	Mens-**ā**, *by*, *with*, or *from a table.*	Mens-**is**, *by*, *with*, or *from tables.*

Note on the signs of the Dative. The word **to**, when it implies *motion to*, is not a sign of the Dative, but is translated by the Prepositions **ad** or **in** with the Accusative, or by the Accusative alone if the Substantive be the name of a town or small island.

Note on the signs of the Ablative. If the Substantive means a *living thing* (as magister, puer, iudex, animal, pp. 5, 7, 8), the words **by**, **with**, or **from** are translated by Prepositions governing the Ablative. *By* is translated by **a** (or **ab**, before a Vowel), *with* by **cum**, and *from* by **a** (**ab**) or **e** (**ex**).

§ 17. **THE SECOND DECLENSION.**

Nominative. The Nominative ends in **-us, -er,** and **-um.**
Gender. **-us** and **-er** generally Masculine, **-um** Neuter.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	Murus, *a wall.*	Mur-**i**, *walls.*
Voc.	Mur-**e**, *O wall.*	Mur-**i**, *O walls.*
Acc.	Mur-**um**, *a wall.*	Mur-**os**, *walls.*
Gen.	Mur-**i**, *of a wall.*	Mur-**orum**, *of walls.*
Dat.	Mur-**o**, *to* or *for a wall.*	Mur-**is**, *to* or *for walls.*
Abl.	Mur-**o**, *by, with,* or *from a wall.*	Mur-**is**, *by, with,* or *from walls.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	Magister, *a master.*	Magistr-**i**, *masters.*
Voc.	Magister, *O master.*	Magistr-**i**, *O masters.*
Acc.	Magistr-**um**, *a master.*	Magistr-**os**, *masters.*
Gen.	Magistr-**i**, *a master's,* or *of a master.*	Magistr-**orum**, *of masters.*
Dat.	Magistr-**o**, *to* or *for a master.*	Magistr-**is**, *to* or *for masters.*
Abl.	Magistr-**o**, *by, with,* or *from a master*[1].	Magistr-**is**, *by, with,* or *from masters*[1].

Note. Some Nouns in **-er** preserve the **e** through all the Oblique Cases, instead of dropping it, as, puer, *a boy.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	Puer, *a boy.*	Puer-**i**, *boys.*
Voc.	Puer, *O boy.*	Puer-**i**, *O boys.*
Acc.	Puer-**um**, *a boy.*	Puer-**os**, *boys.*
Gen.	Puer-**i**, *a boy's,* or *of a boy.*	Puer-**orum**, *of boys.*
Dat.	Puer-**o**, *to* or *for a boy.*	Puer-**is**, *to* or *for boys.*
Abl.	Puer-**o**, *by, with,* or *from a boy*[1].	Puer-**is**, *by, with,* or *from boys*[1].

[1] A Preposition must be used with the Latin word. (See § 16, Note.)

Like 'puer' are declined,—gener, socer, vesper, Liber, presbyter, and compounds of gero and fero, as, armiger[1].

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V.A.	Bellum, *war*, or *O war*.	Bell-**a**, *wars*, or *O wars*.
Gen.	Bell-**i**, *of war*.	Bell-**orum**, *of wars*.
Dat.	Bell-**o**, *to* or *for war*.	Bell-**is**, *to* or *for wars*.
Abl.	Bell-**o**, *by, with*, or *from war*.	Bell-**is**, *by, with*, or *from wars*.

Note on Neuter Nouns. The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Cases of all Neuter Nouns are the same in their respective numbers, and in the Plural they always end in **-a**.

Note on the Vocative of the Second Declension. Filius, *a son*, and names of men ending in **-ius**, make **-i** in the Vocative; as, fili, Virgili. Deus, *God*, has Voc. Deus.

§ 18. THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Nominative. The Nominative ends in **a**, **e**, **o**, **c**, **l**, **n**, **r**, **s**, **t**, and **x**.

Gender. Various.

Divisions. There are two divisions of Nouns of the Third Declension, namely,

(1.) Nouns which have **-um** in the Genitive Plural, and usually *increase* in the Oblique Cases; that is, have more syllables in the Oblique Cases than in the Nominative.

(2.) Nouns which have **-ium** in the Genitive Plural, and do not usually increase in the Oblique Cases.

[1] *Son-in-law, father-in-law, evening, Bacchus, priest, armour-bearer.*

Nouns in -um.

1. *Masculine* or *Feminine.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V.	Iudex, *a judge*, or *O judge.*	Iudic-**es**, *judges*, or *O judges.*
Acc.	Iudĭc-**em**, *a judge.*	Iudic-**es**, *judges.*
Gen.	Iudic-**is**, *a judge's*, or *of a judge.*	Iudic-**um**, *of judges.*
Dat.	Iudic-**i**, *to* or *for a judge.*	Iudic-**ĭbus**, *to* or *for judges.*
Abl.	Iudic-**e**, *by*, *with*, or *from a judge*[1].	Iudic-**ibus**, *by*, *with*, or *from judges.*

2. *Neuter.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.A.	Opus, *a work.*	Oper-**a**, *works.*
Voc.	Opus, *O work.*	Oper-**a**, *O works.*
Gen.	Opĕr-**is**, *of a work.*	Oper-**um**, *of works.*
Dat.	Oper-**i**, *to* or *for a work.*	Oper-**ibus**, *to* or *for works.*
Abl.	Oper-**e**, *by*, *with*, or *from a work.*	Oper-**ibus**, *by*, *with*, or *from works.*

Nouns in -ium.

1. *Masculine* or *Feminine.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V.	Nubes, *a cloud*, or *O cloud.*	Nub-**es**, *clouds*, or *O clouds.*
Acc.	Nub-**em**, *a cloud.*	Nub-**es**, *clouds.*
Gen.	Nub-**is**, *of a cloud.*	Nub-**ium**, *of clouds.*
Dat.	Nub-**i**, *to* or *for a cloud.*	Nub-**ibus**, *to* or *for clouds.*
Abl.	Nub-**e**, *by*, *with*, or *from a cloud.*	Nub-**ibus**, *by*, *with*, or *from clouds.*

[1] A Preposition must be used with the Latin word. (See § 16, Note.)

2. *Neuter.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.A.	Animal, *an animal.*	Animal-**ia**, *animals.*
Voc.	Animal, *O animal.*	Animal-**ia**, *O animals.*
Gen.	Animal-**is**, *an animal's*, or *of an animal.*	Animal-**ium**, *of animals.*
Dat.	Animal-**i**, *to* or *for an animal.*	Animal-**ibus**, *to* or *for animals.*
Abl.	Animal-**i**, *by*, *with*, or *from an animal*[1].	Animal-**ibus**, *by*, *with*, or *from animals*[1].

§ 19. THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nominative. The Nominative ends in **-us** and **-u**.
Gender. **-us** generally Masculine, **-u** Neuter.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V.	Gradŭs, *a step*, or *O step.*	Grad-**ūs**, *steps*, or *O steps.*
Acc.	Grad-**um**, *a step.*	Grad-**ūs**, *steps.*
Gen.	Grad-**ūs**, *of a step.*	Grad-**uum**, *of steps.*
Dat.	Grad-**ui** or **-u**, *to* or *for a step.*	Grad-**ibus**, *to* or *for steps.*
Abl.	Grad-**u**, *by*, *with*, or *from a step.*	Grad-**ibus**, *by*, *with*, or *from steps.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.A.	Genu, *a knee.*	Gen-**ua**, *knees.*
Voc.	Genu, *O knee.*	Gen-**ua**, *O knees.*
Gen.	Gen-**ūs**, *of a knee.*	Gen-**uum**, *of knees.*
D.A.	Gen-**u**, *to*, *for*, *by*, *with*, or *from a knee.*	Gen-**ibus**, *to*, *for*, *by*, *with*, or *from knees.*

Note on the Dative and Ablative Plural. The Dative and Ablative Plural of the Fourth Declension are sometimes written **-ubus** instead of **-ibus**.

[1] *A Preposition must be* used with the Latin word. (See § 16, *Note.*)

§ 20. **THE FIFTH DECLENSION.**

Nominative. The Nominative ends in **-es.**

Gender. Feminine, except dies, *a day*, which is Common (i.e. both Masculine and Feminine) in the Singular, Masculine in the Plural.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V.	Dies, *a day*, or *O day.*	Di-**es**, *days*, or *O days.*
Acc.	Di-**em**, *a day.*	Di-**es**, *days.*
Gen.	Di-**ēi**, *of a day.*	Di-**ērum**, *of days.*
Dat.	Di-**ei**, *to* or *for a day.*	Di-**ebus**, *to* or *for days.*
Abl.	Di-**e**, *by*, *with*, or *from a day.*	Di-**ebus**, *by*, *with*, or *from days.*

§ 21. **Additional Rules of Gender.**

(1.) Names of Men, Months, Winds, People, Mountains, and Rivers are Masculine.

(2.) Names of Women, Countries, Cities, Islands and Plants are Feminine.

(3.) Indeclinable Nouns are Neuter.

§ 22. **ADJECTIVES.**

Adjectives are divided into two classes, the First Class being inflected like the First and Second Declensions, and the Second Class like the Third Declension, of Nouns Substantive.

§ 23. **Adjectives of the First Class.** Adjectives of the First Class have three terminations to each Case, denoting the Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter Gender, as, bonus, bona, bonum, *good*; pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *beautiful.* The Masculine and Neuter terminations are inflected like the Second Declension of Substantives, the Feminine like the First.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Bonus,	-a,	-um.	Bon-i,	-ae,	-a.
Voc.	Bon-e,	-a,	-um.	Bon-i,	-ae,	-a.
Acc.	Bon-um,	-am,	-um.	Bon-os,	-as,	-a.
Gen.	Bon-i,	-ae,	-i.	Bon-orum,	-arum,	-orum.
Dat.	Bon-o,	-ae,	-o.	Bon-is,	-is,	-is.
Abl.	Bon-o,	-a,	-o.	Bon-is,	-is,	-is.

Note. Adjectives must always belong to some Substantive, as, bonus rex, *a good king*. When the Substantive is omitted, the word *man* must be understood with Masculine Adjectives, *woman* (less commonly) with Feminines, and *thing* with Neuters; as, boni, *good men*; bonă, *good things, goods*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.V.	Pulcher,	-a,	-um.	Pulchr-i,	-ae,	-a.
Acc.	Pulchr-um,	-am,	-um.	Pulchr-os,	-as,	-a.
Gen.	Pulchr-i,	-ae,	-i.	Pulchr-orum,	-arum,	-orum.
Dat.	Pulchr-o,	-ae,	-o.	Pulchr-is,	-is,	-is.
Abl.	Pulchr-o,	-a,	-o.	Pulchr-is,	-is,	-is.

Note. Some Adjectives in -er preserve the e throughout, instead of dropping it, as tener, tenera, tenerum, *tender*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.V.	Tener,	-a,	-um.	Tener-i,	-ae,	-a.
Acc.	Tener-um,	-am,	-um.	Tener-os,	-as,	-a.
Gen.	Tener-i,	-ae,	-i.	Tener-orum,	-arum,	-orum.
Dat.	Tener-o,	-ae,	-o.	Tener-is,	-is,	-is.
Abl.	Tener-o,	-a,	-o.	Tener-is,	-is,	-is.

Like 'tener' are declined—lacer, liber, asper, miser, and compounds of gero and fero, as corniger, frugifer[1].

[1] *Torn, free, rough, miserable, horn-bearing, fruit-bearing.*

§ 24. **Adjectives of the Second Class.** Adjectives of the Second Class are inflected like the Third Declension of Substantives; as, tristis, *sad*; melior, *better*; felix, *happy*; ingens, *vast*.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N.V.	Tristis,	triste.	Trist-**es**,	trist-**ia**.
Acc.	Trist-**em**,	triste.		
Gen.	Trist-**is**.		Trist-**ium**.	
Dat.	Trist-**i**.		Trist-**ibus**.	
Abl.	Trist-**i**.			
N.V.	Melior,	melius.	Melior-**es**,	melior-**a**.
Acc.	Melior-**em**,	melius.		
Gen.	Melior-**is**.		Melior-**um**.	
Dat.	Melior-**i**.		Melior-**ibus**.	
Abl.	Melior-**e** (*or* **-i**).			
N.V.	Felix.		Felic-**es**,	felic-**ia**.
Acc.	Felic-**em**,	felix.		
Gen.	Felic-**is**.		Felic-**ium**.	
Dat.	Felic-**i**.		Felic-**ibus**.	
Abl.	Felic-**i** (rarely **-e**).			
N.V.	Ingens.		Ingent-**es**,	ingent-**ia**.
Acc.	Ingent-**em**,	ingens.		
Gen.	Ingent-**is**.		Ingent-**ium**.	
Dat.	Ingent-**i**.		Ingent-**ibus**.	
Abl.	Ingent-**e** (*or* **-i**).			

Some Adjectives in **-er** belong to this class, as, acer, *keen*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.V.	Acer,	acr-is,	acr-e.	Acr-**es**,	**-es**,	**-ia**.
Acc.	Acr-**em**,	**-em**,	-e.	Acr-**es**,	**-es**,	**-ia**.
Gen.	Acr-**is**,	**-is**,	**-is**.	Acr-**ium**,	**-ium**,	**-ium**.
D.A.	Acr-**i**,	**-i**,	**-i**.	Acr-**ibus**,	**-ibus**,	**-ibus**.

Like 'acer' are declined,—alăcer, celĕber, equester, pedester, volŭcer, salūber, celer, and a few others[1]. Celer keeps the e throughout, as, Sing. N.V. Celer, celĕris, celĕre.

§ 25. **Numeral and Pronominal Adjectives.** These for the most part make Gen. Sing. in **-ius**, and the Dat. in **-i**; as, unus, *one*; alius, *another*; uter, *which of two*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Unus,	-a,	-um.	Un-i,	-ae,	-a.
Acc.	Un-um	-am,	-um.	Un-os,	-as,	-a.
Gen.	Un-ĭus,	-ĭus,	-ĭus.	Un-orum,	-arum,	-orum.
Dat.	Un-i,	-i,	-i.	Un-is,	-is,	-is.
Abl.	Un-o,	-a,	-o.	Un-is,	-is,	-is.
Nom.	Alius,	-a,	-ud.	Ali-i,	-ae,	-a.
Acc.	Ali-um,	-am,	-ud.	Ali-os,	-as,	-a.
Gen.	Alī-us,	-us,	-us.	Ali-orum,	-arum,	-orum.
Dat.	Alĭ-i,	-i,	-i.	Ali-is,	-is,	-is.
Abl.	Ali-o,	-a,	-o.	Ali-is,	-is,	-is.
Nom.	Uter,	utr-a,	utr-um.	Utr-i,	-ae,	-a.
Acc.	Utr-um,	-am,	-um.	Utr-os,	-as,	-a.
Gen.	Utr-ĭus,	-ĭus,	-ĭus.	Utr-orum,	-arum,	-orum.
Dat.	Utr-i,	-i,	-i.	Utr-is,	-is,	-is.
Abl.	Utr-o,	-a,	-o.	Utr-is,	-is,	-is.

The Adjectives which make **-ius** in Gen. Sing. and **-i** in Dat. are:

Unus, solus, totus, ullus,
Uter, alter, neuter, nullus[2];

with alius, *another*, and compounds of uter, as uterque, *each of two*, the suffix **-que** being added to each of the cases, as, Sing. Nom. uterque, utraque, utrumque. Those in **-us** are

[1] *Brisk, celebrated, equestrian, pedestrian, winged, healthful, swift.*

[2] *One, alone, the whole, any, which of two, the other* or *one of two, neither, none.*

declined like unus, those in **-er** like uter. But alter keeps the **e** throughout, instead of dropping it, as Sing. N. alter, altĕra, altĕrum.

Unus is only used in the Plural when it agrees with a Noun which has no Singular, as, una castra, *one camp*.

The Numerals duo, *two*, and tres, *three*, are thus declined:

	PLURAL.			PLURAL.	
	M.	F.	N.	M.F.	N.
Nom.	Duo,	duae,	duo.	Tres,	tria.
Acc.	Du-**os** or duo,	du-**as**,	duo.	Tres,	tria.
Gen.	Du-**orum**,	du-**arum**,	du-**orum**.	Tr-**ium**.	
D.Ab.	Du-**obus**,	du-**abus**,	du-**obus**.	Tri-**bus**.	

Ambo, *both*, is declined like duo.

The other Cardinal Numbers, from quattuor, *four*, to centum, *a hundred*, are indeclinable.

§ 26. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three degrees of Comparison, the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

§ 27. **Rule for Comparison of Adjectives.** The Comparative is formed from the Positive by changing **-i** or **-is** of the Genitive into **-ior.**

The Superlative is formed from the Positive by changing **-i** or **-is** of the Genitive into **-issĭmus.**

Examples:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Durus, *hard*, G. duri,	durior, *harder*,	durissimus, *hardest*, or *very hard.*
Brevis, *short*, G. brevis,	brevior, *shorter*,	brevissimus, *shortest*, or *very short.*
Audax, *bold*, G. audacis,	audacior, *bolder*,	audacissimus, *boldest*, or very bold.

§ 28. **Exceptions.** There are several exceptions to the above rule:

(1) *Adjectives in* **-er.** Adjectives in **-er** form their Comparatives according to the rule, but form their Superlatives from the *Nominative* Masculine Singular of the Positive by adding **-rĭmus**, as, pulcher, *beautiful*, Gen. pulchri, Comparative pulchrior, *more beautiful*, Superlative pulcherrimus, *most beautiful* or *very beautiful.*

(2) *Six Adjectives in* **-ilis.** Six Adjectives in **-ilis**,—facilis, difficilis, similis, dissimilis, gracilis, and humilis [1],—form their Superlative by changing **-is** of the Genitive into **-lĭmus**, as, facilis, *easy*, facillimus. Other Adjectives in **-ilis** have commonly no Superlative.

(3) *Adjectives in* **-us** *preceded by a Vowel.* If a vowel comes before **-us** in the Nominative, the comparison is generally made by the Adverbs magis, *more*, and maxime, *most*, as, idoneus, *useful*, magis idoneus, *more useful*, maxime idoneus, *most useful* or *very useful.*

(4) *Adjectives in* **-dĭcus, -fĭcus,** and **-vŏlus.** Adjectives ending in **-dicus, -ficus,** and **-volus,** make **-entior, -entissimus** in the Comparative and Superlative, as, **malevŏl-us,** *spiteful*, malevol-**entior**, malevol-**entissimus.**

§ 29. **Irregular Comparison.** Many Adjectives are compared irregularly, as:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Bonus, *good*,	melior,	optimus.
Malus, *bad*,	peior,	pessimus.
Magnus, *great*,	maior,	maximus.
Parvus, *small*,	minor,	minimus.
Multus, *much*,	plus,	plurimus.
Nequam, *worthless*,	nequior,	nequissimus.

[1] *Easy, difficult, like, unlike, slender, lowly.*

Four Adjectives derived from Prepositions have a double Superlative:

Preposition.	Positive Adjective.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Extra, *outside,*	extĕrus, *outward,*	exterior,	extrēmus *and* extĭmus.
Infra, *beneath,*	infĕrus, *low,*	inferior,	infĭmus *and* īmus.
Supra, *above,*	supĕrus, *high,*	superior,	suprēmus *and* summus.
Post, *after,*	postĕrus, *next after,*	posterior,	postrēmus *and* postŭmus.

Six Adjectives derived from Prepositions have no Positive:

Preposition.	Comparative Adj.	Superlative.
Citra, *on this side,*	citĕrior,	citimus.
De, *from,*	detĕrior (*less good*),	deterrimus.
Intra, *within,*	intĕrior,	intimus.
Prae, *before,*	prior (*former*),	prīmus (*first*).
Prope, *near,*	propior,	proximus.
Ultra, *beyond,*	ultĕrior,	ultimus (*last*).

Other irregular comparisons worthy of notice are:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Dives, *rich,*	ditior,	ditissimus.
Senex, *old,*	senior,	[natu maximus].
Iuvĕnis, *young,*	iunior,	[natu minimus].
Dexter, *on the right hand,*	dexterior,	dextĭmus.
Sacer, *sacred,*		sacerrimus.
Vetus, *old,*		veterrimus.

§ 30. **Comparison of Adverbs.** Adverbs derived from Adjectives usually make **-ius** in the Comparative, and **-issime** in the Superlative, as:

Digne, *worthily,*	dignius,	dignissime.
Gravĭter, *heavily,*	gravius,	gravissime.

§ 31. PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are of eight kinds, viz. Personal, Reflexive, Possessive, Demonstrative, Definitive, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite.

§ 32. **Personal Pronouns.** The Personal Pronouns are **ego**, *I*, and **tu**, *thou*, which are thus declined:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	Ego, *I.*	Nos, *we.*
Acc.	Me, *me.*	Nos, *us.*
Gen.	Mei, *of me.*	Nostrum *or* Nostri, *of us.*
Dat.	Mihi, *to* or *for me.*	Nobis, *to* or *for us.*
Abl.	Me, *by*, *with*, or *from me.*	Nobis, *by*, *with*, or *from us.*
N. V.	Tu, *thou.*	Vos, *ye* or *you.*
Acc.	Te, *thee.*	Vos, *you.*
Gen.	Tui, *of thee.*	Vestrum *or* Vestri, *of you.*
Dat.	Tibi, *to* or *for thee.*	Vobis, *to* or *for you.*
Abl.	Te, *by*, *with*, or *from thee.*	Vobis, *by*, *with*, or *from you.*

Note. **Ille**, **illa**, **illud**, and **is**, **ea**, **id**, are often used as Personal Pronouns, and translated *he*, *she*, *it.*

§ 33. **Reflexive Pronoun.** The Reflexive Pronoun is **se**, *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, or *themselves.*

Nom. (wanting).
Acc. Se or sese, *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, or *themselves.*
Gen. Sui, *of himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *themselves.*
Dat. Sibi, *to* or *for himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *themselves.*
Abl. Se *or* sese, *by*, *with*, or *from himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *themselves.*

§ 34. **Possessive Pronouns.** The Possessive Pronouns are **meus**, *my*, **tuus**, *thy*, **suus**, *his own*, *her own*, *its own*, *or their own*, and **cuius**, *whose*, which are declined like

bonus; **noster**, *our*, and **vester**, *your*, which are declined like pulcher.

Note. **Meus** has **mi** in the Vocative Singular Masculine. **Tuus** and **suus** have no Vocative.

§ 35. **Demonstrative Pronouns.** The Demonstrative Pronouns are **hic**, *this*, **is**, *that*, **ille**, *that*, **iste**, *that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Hic,	haec,	hoc.	Hi,	hae,	haec.
Acc.	Hunc,	hanc,	hoc.	Hos,	has,	haec.
Gen.	Huius,	huius,	huius.	Horum,	harum,	horum.
Dat.	Huic,	huic,	huic.	His,	his,	his.
Abl.	Hoc,	hac,	hoc.	His,	his,	his.
Nom.	Is,	ea,	id.	Ii *or* ei,	eae,	ea.
Acc.	Eum,	eam,	id.	Eos,	eas,	ea.
Gen.	Eius,	eius,	eius.	Eorum,	earum,	eorum.
Dat.	Ei,	ei,	ei.	Iis *or* eis,	iis *or* eis,	iis *or* eis.
Abl.	Eo,	eā,	eo.	Iis *or* eis,	iis *or* eis,	iis *or* eis.
Nom.	Ille,	illa,	illud.	Illi,	illae,	illa.
Acc.	Illum,	illam,	illud.	Illos,	illas,	illa.
Gen.	Illĭus,	illius,	illius.	Illorum,	illarum,	illorum.
Dat.	Illi,	illi,	illi.	Illis,	illis,	illis.
Abl.	Illo,	illā,	illo.	Illis,	illis,	illis.

Iste is declined like **ille.**

Note. **Hic** means *this near me*, **iste**, *that near you*, and **ille**, *that yonder* or *that other.*

§ 36. **Definitive Pronouns.** The Definitive Pronouns are **idem**, *the same*, and **ipse**, *self.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	Ĭdem,	eădem,	ĭdem.	Ĭīdem,	eaedem,	eădem.
A.	Eundem,	eandem,	ĭdem.	Eosdem,	easdem,	eadem.
G.	Eiusdem,	eiusdem,	eiusdem.	Eorundem,	earundem,	eorundem.
D.	Eīdem,	eidem,	eidem.	Ĭisdem,	iisdem,	iisdem.
A.	Eodem,	eādem,	eodem.	Iisdem,	iisdem,	iisdem.

Ipse is declined like **ille**, except that it makes **ipsum** in the Neuter Nom. and Acc.

§ 37. **Relative Pronoun.** The Relative Pronoun is **qui**, *who* or *which*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Qui,	quae,	quod.	Qui,	quae,	quae.
Acc.	Quem,	quam,	quod.	Quos,	quas,	quae.
Gen.	Cuius,	cuius,	cuius.	Quorum,	quarum,	quorum.
Dat.	Cui,	cui,	cui.	Quibus *or* queis.		
Abl.	Quo,	quā,	quo.	Quibus *or* queis.		

§ 38. **Interrogative Pronoun.** The Interrogative Pronoun is **quis**, (**quis**), **quid**, *who?* or *what?* It is declined in the Oblique Cases like **qui**, except that it makes **quid** instead of **quod** in the Neuter. If it agrees with a Substantive the form is sometimes **qui**, **quae**, **quod**, declined exactly like **qui**.

§ 39. **Indefinite Pronoun.** The Indefinite Pronoun is **quis**, (**qua**), **quid**, *any*. It is declined in the Oblique Cases like **qui**, except that it makes **quid** instead of **quod** in the Neuter Singular, and **quă** or **quae** in the Neuter Plural. If it agrees with a Substantive the form is sometimes **qui**, **quae**, **quod**, declined exactly like the Relative **qui**, except Neuter Plural **quă** or **quae**.

THE VERB.

§ 40. **Voice.** Verbs have two Voices, the Active, as, amo, *I love;* the Passive, as, amor, *I am loved.*

§ 41. **Transitive and Intransitive Verbs.** Transitive Verbs are those in which the action passes on to an Object, as, amo te, *I love thee.* Intransitive or Neuter Verbs are those in which the action does not pass on to an Object, as, sto, *I stand.* These latter have no Passive Voice[1].

[1] *Except in* what is called the Impersonal Passive Construction, as, ***statur, it is stood,*** or ***a stand is made.***

§ 42. **Deponents.** Deponent Verbs are Passive in form but Active in meaning, as, hortor, *I exhort.*

§ 43. **Moods.** There are four Moods, the Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive. The three first constitute the Verb Finite, the last the Verb Infinite.

§ 44. **Tenses.** There are Seven Tenses, the Present, Future Simple, Perfect, Future Perfect; Imperfect, Simple Past, and Pluperfect. Of these the four first are called Primary, the last three Historic, Tenses.

§ 45. **Number and Person.** There are in each Tense two Numbers, Singular and Plural, and in each Number three Persons, First, Second, and Third.

§ 46. **Conjugation.** Verbs have four different kinds of Flexion, which are called the Four Conjugations.

The First ends in **-āre** in the Infin. Mood, as, amāre, *to love.*
The Second in **-ēre** in the Infin. Mood, as, monēre, *to advise.*
The Third in **-ĕre** in the Infin. Mood, as, regĕre, *to rule.*
The Fourth in **-īre** in the Infin. Mood, as, audīre, *to hear.*

§ 47. **Principal Parts of the Verb.** The parts of the Verb from which all the other Tenses are derived are the Present, Perfect, and Supine in **-um.** These, together with the Infinitive Mood, are to be named when the principal parts of a Verb are required, e.g.:

	Pres. Indic.	Infinitive.	Perfect Indic.	Supine.
1st Conj.	Amo,	amāre,	amavi,	amātum.
2nd Conj.	Moneo,	monēre,	monui,	monĭtum.
3rd Conj.	Rego,	regĕre,	rexi,	rectum.
4th Conj.	Audio,	audīre,	audivi,	audītum.

§ 48. **The Verb Sum, Esse, Fui,** *to be.* Before other Verbs are conjugated it is necessary to learn the Auxiliary Verb **sum, esse, fui,** *to be.*

§ 49. Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb 'Sum.'

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.			
Primary Tenses.	Present Tense.	1 p. S.	sum, *I am.*
		2 p. S.	ĕs, *Thou art.*
		3 p. S.	est, *He, she, it is.*
		1 p. Pl.	sŭmus, *We are.*
		2 p. Pl.	estis, *Ye* or *you are.*
		3 p. Pl.	sunt, *They are.*
	Future-Simple Tense.	1 p. S.	ĕro, *I shall be.*
		2 p. S.	eris, *Thou wilt be.*
		3 p. S.	erit, *He, she, it will be.*
		1 p. Pl.	erĭmus, *We shall be.*
		2 p. Pl.	erĭtis, *Ye* or *you will be.*
		3 p. Pl.	erunt, *They will be.*
	Perfect Tense.	1 p. S.	fŭi, *I have been.*
		2 p. S.	fuisti, *Thou hast been.*
		3 p. S.	fuit, *He, she it has been.*
		1 p. Pl.	fuĭmus, *We have been.*
		2 p. Pl.	fuistis, *Ye* or *you have been.*
		3 p. Pl.	fuērunt *or* fuēre, *They have been.*

	FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	fŭĕro, *I shall have been.*
		2 p. S.	fueris, *Thou wilt have been.*
		3 p. S.	fuerit, *He, she, it will have been.*
		1 p. Pl.	fuerĭmus, *We shall have been.*
		2 p. Pl.	fuerītis, *Ye* or *you will have been.*
		3 p. Pl.	fuerint, *They will have been.*
Historic Tenses.	IMPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	ĕram, *I was, used to be,* or *began to be.*
		2 p. S.	eras, *Thou wast,* etc.
		3 p. S.	erat, *He, she, it was.*
		1 p. Pl.	erāmus, *We were.*
		2 p. Pl.	eratis, *Ye* or *you were.*
		3 p. Pl.	erant, *They were.*
	SIMPLE-PAST TENSE.	1 p. S.	fui, *I was.*
		2 p. S.	fuisti, *Thou wast.*
		3 p. S.	fuit, *He, she, it was.*
		1 p. Pl.	fuĭmus, *We were.*
		2 p. Pl.	fuistis, *Ye* or *you were.*
		3 p. Pl.	fuērunt *or* fuēre, *They were.*
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	fŭĕram, *I had been.*
		2 p. S.	fueras, *Thou hadst been.*
		3 p. S.	fuerat, *He, she, it had been.*
		1 p. Pl.	fuerāmus, *We had been.*
		2 p. Pl.	fueratis, *Ye* or *you had been.*
		3 p. Pl.	fuerant, *They had been.*

Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb 'Sum.'

VERB FINITE.

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.			
Primary Tenses.	Present Tense.	1 p. S.	sim, *I may be, may I be*, or *let me be.*
		2 p. S.	sis, *Thou mayst be*, etc.
		3 p. S.	sit, *He, she, it may be.*
		1 p. Pl.	sīmus, *We may be.*
		2 p. Pl.	sitis, *Ye* or *you may be.*
		3 p. Pl.	sint, *They may be.*
	Future-Simple Tense.	1 p. S.	The Future Simple in this tense is formed by combining the Future Participle with *sim* or *essem*, as *futurus sim* or *essem.* (The form *futurus essem* belongs to the Historic Tenses.)
		2 p. S.	
		3 p. S.	
		1 p. Pl.	
		2 p. Pl.	
		3 p. Pl.	
	Perfect Tense.	1 p. S.	fŭĕrim, *I may have been.*
		2 p. S.	fueris, *Thou mayst have been.*
		3 p. S.	fuerit, *He, she, it may have been.*
		1 p. Pl.	fuerĭmus, *We may have been.*
		2 p. Pl.	fuerĭtis, *Ye* or *you may have been.*
		3 p. Pl.	fuerint, *They may have been.*

Historic Tenses.	IMPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	essem *or* fŏrem, *I should* or *might be.*
		2 p. S.	esses *or* fores, *Thou wouldst be.*
		3 p. S.	esset *or* foret, *He, she, it would be.*
		1 p. Pl.	essēmus *or* forēmus, *We should be.*
		2 p. Pl.	essetis *or* foretis, *Ye* or *you would be.*
		3 p. Pl.	essent *or* forent, *They would be.*
	SIMPLE-PAST TENSE.	1 p. S.	Rendered variously by *fuerim, essem*, and *fuissem.* See § 76. 58, *Note.*
		2 p. S.	
		3 p. S.	
		1 p. Pl.	
		2 p. Pl.	
		3 p. Pl.	
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	fŭissem, *I should* or *might have been.*
		2 p. S.	fuisses, *Thou wouldst have been.*
		3 p. S.	fuisset, *He would have been.*
		1 p. Pl.	fuissēmus, *We should have been.*
		2 p. Pl.	fuissētis, *Ye* or *you would have been.*
		3 p. Pl.	fuissent, *They would have been.*

Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb 'Sum.'

	VERB FINITE.		**VERB INFINITE.**	
Primary Tense.	**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**			
Present Tense.	1 p. S.			
	2 p. S.	sis, ĕs, esto, *be thou.*		
	3 p. S.	sit, esto, *let him be.*		
	1 p. Pl.	sīmus, *let us be.*		
	2 p. Pl.	sītis, este, estōte, *be ye.*		
	3 p. Pl.	sint, sunto, *let them be.*		
			Infinitive Mood. Present and Imperfect,	esse, *to be.*
			Perfect and Pluperfect,	fŭisse, *to have been*
			Simple-Past,	(wanting).
			Future,	fōre *or* fŭtūrus esse, *to be about to be.*
			Participle. Future,	fŭtūrus, *about to be.*

Note on the Verb **Sum.** Sum is called *auxiliary* (i.e. *helping*) because, like the Verb *to be* in English, it is joined with participles to form many tenses, especially in the Passive Voice of Verbs, as, amatus sum, *I have been loved.*

Note on the Compounds of **Sum.** Like sum are declined its compounds, absum, adsum, desum, insum, intersum, obsum, praesum, prosum, subsum, supersum[1]. Insum and subsum want the perfect, and tenses derived from it. Prosum inserts *d* before *e*, as Ind. Pres. prosum, prodes, prodest, prosŭmus, prodestis, prosunt. Possum [for potis-sum], *to be able*, will be fully conjugated hereafter (see p. 80). Absum and praesum alone have Present Participles, absens and praesens.

Note on some Irregular forms of **Sum.** Fuam, fuas, fuat, and siem, sies, siet, are found in poetry for sim, sis, sit. Escit and escunt are old forms for erit and erunt.

Note on the Periphrastic Conjugation. Future Participles, as futurus, united with the Verb Sum form a separate Conjugation, as futurus sum, eram, fui, fueram, sim, essem, etc. This is called the Periphrastic Conjugation.

Note on the Accusative and Infinitive. After Impersonal Verbs and Verbs of declaring, perceiving, or thinking, the construction called the Accusative and Infinitive is frequently found. The rule for translating it is: construe the Accusative as if it were a Nominative, and the Infinitive as if it were a Finite Verb, and prefix the word *that*, as, Constat Deum esse bonum, *It is well known that God is good.*

Note on the Finite Verb. The Pronouns *he, she, it*, and *they*, are implied in the endings of the Third Person, as, fuit, *it was;* but if a Noun is supplied as Subject to the Verb, the Pronoun is omitted in translation, as Troia fuit, *Troy was*, not *Troy it was.*

[1] *Be absent, be present, be wanting, be in, be between, be against, be before, benefit, be under, be over.*

§ 50. FIRST CONJUGATION. ACTIVE VOICE.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.			
Primary Tenses.	PRESENT TENSE.	1 p. S.	ăm-o, *I love, am loving*, or *do love.*
		2 p. S.	am-as, *Thou lovest, art loving*, or *dost love.*
		3 p. S.	am-at, *He, she, it loves, is loving*, etc.
		1 p. Pl.	am-āmus, *We love*, etc.
		2 p. Pl.	am-atis, *Ye* or *you love*, etc.
		3 p. Pl.	am-ant, *They love*, etc.
	FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.	1 p. S.	am-ābo, *I shall love.*
		2 p. S.	am-abis, *Thou wilt love.*
		3 p. S.	am-abit, *He, she, it will love.*
		1 p. Pl.	am-abĭmus, *We shall love.*
		2 p. Pl.	am-abitis, *Ye* or *you will love.*
		3 p. Pl.	am-abunt, *They will love.*
	PERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	amāv-i, *I have loved.*
		2 p. S.	amav-isti, *Thou hast loved.*
		3 p. S.	amav-it, *He, she, it has loved.*
		1 p. Pl.	amav-ĭmus, *We have loved.*
		2 p. Pl.	amav-istis, *Ye* or *you have loved.*
		3 p. Pl.	amav-ērunt *or* -ēre, *They have loved.*

	FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	amāv-ĕro, *I shall have loved.*
		2 p. S.	amav-eris, *Thou wilt have loved.*
		3 p. S.	amav-erit, *He, she, it will have loved.*
		1 p. Pl.	amav-erĭmus, *We shall have loved.*
		2 p. Pl.	amav-erĭtis, *Ye* or *you will have loved.*
		3 p. Pl.	amav-erint, *They will have loved.*
Historic Tenses.	IMPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	am-ābam, *I was loving, I loved, used to love,* or *began*
		2 p. S.	am-abas, *Thou wast loving,* etc. [*to love.*
		3 p. S.	am-abat, *He, she, it was loving.*
		1 p. Pl.	am-abāmus, *We were loving.*
		2 p. Pl.	am-abatis, *Ye* or *you were loving.*
		3 p. Pl.	am-abant, *They were loving.*
	SIMPLE-PAST TENSE.	1 p. S.	amāv-i, *I loved,* or *did love.*
		2 p. S.	amav-isti, *Thou lovedst,* etc.
		3 p. S.	amav-it, *He, she, it loved.*
		1 p. Pl.	amav-ĭmus, *We loved.*
		2 p. Pl.	amav-istis, *Ye* or *you loved.*
		3 p. Pl.	amav-ērunt *or* -ēre, *They loved.*
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	amāv-ĕram, *I had loved.*
		2 p. S.	amav-eras, *Thou hadst loved.*
		3 p. S.	amav-erat, *He, she, it had loved.*
		1 p. Pl.	amav-erāmus, *We had loved.*
		2 p. Pl.	amav-eratis, *Ye* or *you had loved.*
		3 p. Pl.	amav-erant, *They had loved.*

First Conjugation. Active Voice.

VERB FINITE.

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.			
Primary Tenses.	Present Tense.	1 p. S.	am-em, *I may love, may I love,* or *let me love.*
		2 p. S.	am-es, *Thou mayst love,* etc.
		3 p. S.	am-et, *He, she, it may love.*
		1 p. Pl.	am-ēmus, *We may love.*
		2 p. Pl.	am-etis, *Ye* or *you may love.*
		3 p. Pl.	am-ent, *They may love.*
	Future-Simple Tense.	1 p. S.	The Future Simple in this Mood is formed by combining the Future Participle with *sim* or *essem*, as, *amaturus sim* or *essem.* (The form *amaturus essem* belongs to the Historic Tenses.)
		2 p. S.	
		3 p. S.	
		1 p. Pl.	
		2 p. Pl.	
		3 p. Pl.	
	Perfect Tense.	1 p. S.	amav-ĕrim, *I may have loved.*
		2 p. S.	amav-eris, *Thou mayst have loved.*
		3 p. S.	amav-erit, *He, she, it may have loved.*
		1 p. Pl.	amav-erĭmus, *We may have loved.*
		2 p. Pl.	amav-erītis, *Ye* or *you may have loved.*
		3 p. Pl.	amav-erint, *They may have loved.*

Historic Tenses.	IMPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	am-ārem, *I should* or *might love.*
		2 p. S.	am-ares, *Thou wouldst love.*
		3 p. S.	am-aret, *He, she, it would love.*
		1 p. Pl.	am-arēmus, *We should love.*
		2 p. Pl.	am-aretis, *Ye* or *you would love.*
		3 p. Pl.	am-arent, *They would love.*
	SIMPLE-PAST TENSE.	1 p. S.	Rendered variously by *amaverim*, *amarem*, and *amavissem*. See § 76. 58, *Note.*
		2 p. S.	
		3 p. S.	
		1 p. Pl.	
		2 p. Pl.	
		3 p. Pl.	
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	amav-issem, *I should* or *might have loved.*
		2 p. S.	amav-isses, *Thou wouldst have loved.*
		3 p. S.	amav-isset, *He, she, it would have loved.*
		1 p. Pl.	amav-issēmus, *We should have loved.*
		2 p. Pl.	amav-issetis, *Ye* or *you would have loved.*
		3 p. Pl.	amav-issent, *They would have loved.*

First Conjugation. Active Voice.

VERB FINITE.

Primary Tense.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.	1 p. S.	
	2 p. S.	am-a, am-āto, *love thou.*
	3 p. S.	am-et, am-āto, *let him love.*
	1 p. Pl.	am-ēmus, *let us love.*
	2 p. Pl.	am-āte, am-atōte, *love ye.*
	3 p. Pl.	am-ent, am-anto, *let them love.*

VERB INFINITE.

Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect,	ăm-āre, *loving*, or *to love.* It means literally '*the act of loving.*'
Perfect and Pluperfect,	amāv-isse, *to have loved.*
Simple-Past,	(wanting), *see Note.*
Future,	amātūrus esse, *to be about to love.*

VERB INFINITE (*continued*).

Gerunds.

Accusative,	am-andum, *loving.* (Used after Prepositions governing the Accusative.)
Genitive,	am-andi, *of loving.*
Dat. Abl.,	am-ando, *for* or *by loving.*

Supines.

in -um	am-ātum, *to love.* (Only used after verbs of motion.)
in -u	am-ātu, *in loving.*

Participles.

Present,	am-ans, *loving* (declined like ingens).
Perfect,	(wanting). The meaning '*having loved*' may be rendered by *quum* with Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, as, Quum amaverit *or* amavisset.
Future,	am-ātūrus, *being about to love.*

Note on **do** *and* **did.** These Old English signs of the Present and Simple Past are now chiefly used in the Negative and Interrogative forms, as, I *do* not love, I *did* not love; *do* I love? *did* I love? etc.

Note on the Imperfect Indicative. The translation *I loved* can only be used of amabam when it means, *I was loving at the time.*

Note on the Finite Verb. The Pronouns, *he, she, it,* and *they,* are implied in the endings of the Third Person, as, amat, *he* loves; but if a Noun is supplied as Subject to the Verb, the Pronoun is omitted in translation, as, Caesar amat, *Caesar loves,* not *Caesar he loves.*

Note on Impersonal Verbs. Verbs in the Third Person Singular which have the word *it* for their apparent Nominative in English are called Impersonal Verbs, as, constat, *it is well known.*

Note on the Subjunctive Mood. The Subjunctive Mood is known generally by the signs *may, may have, should, should have;* but in dependent sentences, and when governed by certain Conjunctions, it must often be construed as an Indicative; as, Quum amavissem, *When I had loved.*

Note on the Accusative and Infinitive. After Impersonal Verbs, and Verbs of declaring, perceiving, or thinking, the construction called the Accusative and Infinitive is frequently found. The rule for translating it is;—construe the Accusative as if it were a Nominative, and the Infinitive as if it were a Finite Verb, and prefix the word *that;* as, Constat Caesarem amare, *It is well known that Caesar loves.*

Note on the Infinitive Simple Past. This tense only occurs in the Accusative and Infinitive Construction. It is rendered by *amavisse* or *amare;* by *amavisse* if the governing Verb is a Primary tense, by *amare* if it is Historic.

Note on the termination in **-ing.** The word lov-*ing* is (1) the Old English Infinitive lov-*en, to love,* and is used to translate the Infinitive Mood and Gerunds, and means 'the act of loving,' and is therefore a Substantive; but (2) as a translation of the Participle amans it is used Adjectivally, and must always agree with some Substantive or Pronoun.

Note on the Ablative Absolute. This usually consists of a Noun and a Participle, both in the Ablative Case, but is construed without any Ablative Sign, as, Caesare amaturo, *Caesar being about to love.*

§ 51. Second Conjugation. Active Voice.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.			
Primary Tenses.	Present Tense.	1 p. S.	mŏn-eo, *I advise, am advising*, or *do advise*
		2 p. S.	mon-es, *Thou advisest, art advising*, or *dost advise.*
		3 p. S.	mon-et, *He, she, it advises*, etc.
		1 p. Pl.	mon-ēmus, *We advise.*
		2 p. Pl.	mon-etis, *Ye* or *you would advise.*
		3 p. Pl.	mon-ent, *They advise*, etc.
	Future-Simple Tense.	1 p. S.	mon-ēbo, *I shall advise.*
		2 p. S.	mon-ebis, *Thou wilt advise.*
		3 p. S.	mon-ebit, *He, she, it will advise.*
		1 p. Pl.	mon-ebĭmus, *We shall advise.*
		2 p. Pl.	mon-ebitis, *Ye* or *you will advise.*
		3 p. Pl.	mon-ebunt, *They will advise.*
	Perfect Tense.	1 p. S.	monŭ-i, *I have advised.*
		2 p. S.	monu-isti, *Thou hast advised.*
		3 p. S.	monu-it, *He, she, it has advised.*
		1 p. Pl.	monu-ĭmus, *We have advised.*
		2 p. Pl.	monu-istis, *Ye* or *you have advised.*
		3 p. Pl.	monu-ērunt *or* -ēre, *They have advised.*

	Future-Perfect Tense.	1 p. S.	monŭ-ĕro, *I shall have advised.*
		2 p. S.	monu-eris, *Thou will have advised.*
		3 p. S.	monu-erit, *He, she, it will have advised.*
		1 p. Pl.	monu-ĕrĭmus, *We shall have advised.*
		2 p. Pl.	monu-ĕrĭtis, *Ye* or *you will have advised.*
		3 p. Pl.	monu-erint, *They will have advised.*
Historic Tenses.	Imperfect Tense.	1 p. S.	mon-ēbam, *I was advising, I advised, used to advise,* or
		2 p. S.	mon-ēbas, *Thou wast advising,* etc. [*began to advise.*
		3 p. S.	mon-ebat, *He, she, it was advising.*
		1 p. Pl.	mon-ebāmus, *We were advising.*
		2 p. Pl.	mon-ebatis, *Ye* or *you were advising.*
		3 p. Pl.	mon-ebant, *They were advising.*
	Simple-Past Tense.	1 p. S.	monŭ-i, *I advised* or *did advise.*
		2 p. S.	monu-isti, *Thou advisedst,* etc.
		3 p. S.	monu-it, *He, she, it advised.*
		1 p. Pl.	monu-ĭmus, *We advised.*
		2 p. Pl.	monu-istis, *Ye* or *you advised.*
		3 p. Pl.	monu-ērunt *or* -ēre, *They advised.*
	Pluperfect Tense.	1 p. S.	monŭ-ĕram, *I had advised.*
		2 p. S.	monu-eras, *Thou hadst advised.*
		3 p. S.	monu-erat, *He, she, it had advised.*
		1 p. Pl.	monu-erāmus, *We had advised.*
		2 p. Pl.	monu-eratis, *Ye* or *you had advised.*
		3 p. Pl.	monu-erant, *They had advised.*

SECOND CONJUGATION. ACTIVE VOICE.

VERB FINITE.

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.			
Primary Tenses.	PRESENT TENSE.	1 p. S.	mon-ĕam, *I may advise, may I advise,* or *let me advise.*
		2 p. S.	mon-eas, *Thou mayst advise,* etc.
		3 p. S.	mon-eat, *He, she, it may advise.*
		1 p. Pl.	mon-eāmus, *We may advise.*
		2 p. Pl.	mon-eatis, *Ye* or *you may advise.*
		3 p. Pl.	mon-eant, *They may advise.*
	FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.	1 p. S.	The Future Simple in this Mood is formed by combining the Future Participle with *sim* or *essem,* as, *moniturus sim* or *essem.* (The form *moniturus essem* belongs to the Historic Tenses.)
		2 p. S.	
		3 p. S.	
		1 p. Pl.	
		2 p. Pl.	
		3 p. Pl.	
	PERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	monŭ-ĕrim, *I may have advised.*
		2 p. S.	monu-eris, *Thou mayst have advised.*
		3 p. S.	monu-erit, *He, she, it may have advised.*
		1 p. Pl.	monu-erĭmus, *We may have advised.*
		2 p. Pl.	monu-eritis, *Ye* or *you may have advised.*
		3 p. Pl.	monu-erint, *They may have advised.*

Historic Tenses.	IMPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	mon-ērem, *I should* or *might advise.*
		2 p. S.	mon-eres, *Thou wouldst advise.*
		3 p. S.	mon-eret, *He, she, it would advise.*
		1 p. Pl.	mon-erēmus, *We should advise.*
		2 p. Pl.	mon-eretis, *Ye* or *you would advise.*
		3 p. Pl.	mon-erent, *They would advise.*
	SIMPLE-PAST TENSE.	1 p. S.	Rendered variously by *monuerim, monerem,* and *monuissem.* See § 76. 58, *Note.*
		2 p. S.	
		3 p. S.	
		1 p. Pl.	
		2 p. Pl	
		3 p. Pl.	
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	monŭ-issem, *I should* or *might have advised.*
		2 p. S.	monu-isses, *Thou wouldst have advised.*
		3 p. S.	monu-isset, *He, she, it would have advised.*
		1 p. Pl.	monu-issēmus, *We should have advised.*
		2 p. Pl.	monu-issetis, *Ye* or *you would have advised.*
		3 p. Pl.	monu-issent, *They would have advised.*

VERB FINITE.

Primary Tense.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Perfect Tense.

1 p. S.		
2 p. S.	mon-ē, mon-ēto,	*advise thou.*
3 p. S.	mon-eat, mon-ēto,	*let him advise.*
1 p. Pl.	mon-eāmus,	*let us advise.*
2 p. Pl.	mon-ēte, mon-etōte,	*advise ye.*
3 p. Pl.	mon-eant, mon-ento,	*let them advise.*

VERB INFINITE.

Infinitive Mood.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT,	mon-ēre, *advising*, or *to advise.* It means literally '*the act of advising.*'
PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT,	monŭ-isse, *to have advised.*
SIMPLE-PAST,	(wanting), *see Note.*
FUTURE,	mon-ĭtūrus esse, *to be about to advise.*

VERB INFINITE (*continued*).

Gerunds.

ACCUSATIVE,	mon-endum, *advising.* (Used after Prepositions governing the Accusative.)
GENITIVE,	mon-endi, *of advising.*
DAT. ABL.,	mon-endo, *for* or *by advising.*

Supines.

in -um	mon-ĭtum, *to advise.* (Only used after Verbs of motion.)
in -u	mon-ĭtu, *in advising.*

Participles.

PRESENT,	mon-ens, *advising* (declined like ingens).
PERFECT,	(wanting). The meaning '*having advised*' may be rendered by quum with Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, as, quum monuerit *or* monuisset.
FUTURE,	mon-ĭtūrus, *being about to advise.*

Note on **do** *and* **did.** These Old English signs of the Present and Simple Past are now chiefly used in the Negative and Interrogative forms, as, I *do* not advise; I *did* not advise; *do* I advise? *did* I advise? etc.

Note on the Imperfect Indicative. The translation *I advised* can only be used of monebam when it means, *I was advising at the time.*

Note on the Finite Verb. The Pronouns, *he*, *she*, *it*, and *they*, are implied in the endings of the Third Person, as, mon-ebat, *he was advising;* but if a Noun is supplied as Subject to the Verb, the Pronoun is omitted in translation, as, Caesar mon-ebat, *Caesar was advising*, not, *Caesar he was advising.*

Note on Impersonal Verbs. Verbs in the Third Person Singular which have the word *it* for their apparent Nominative in English are called Impersonal Verbs, as, licet, *it is permitted.*

Note on the Subjunctive Mood. The Subjunctive Mood is known generally by the signs *may*, *may have*, *should*, *should have;* but in dependent sentences, and when governed by certain Conjunctions, it must often be construed as an Indicative, as, Si monuissem, *If I had advised.*

Note on the Accusative and Infinitive. After Impersonal Verbs, and Verbs of declaring, perceiving, or thinking, the Construction called the Accusative and Infinitive is frequently found. The rule for translating it is:—construe the Accusative as if it were a Nominative, and the Infinitive as if it were a Finite Verb, and prefix the word *that*, as, Dicit Caesarem monuisse, *He says that Caesar has advised.*

Note on the Infinitive Simple Past. This tense only occurs in the Accusative and Infinitive Construction. It is rendered by *monuisse* or *monere;* by *monuisse* if the governing Verb is a Primary Tense, by *monere* if it is Historic.

Note on the termination in **-ing.** The word advis-*ing* is (1) the old Infinitive advis-*en, to advise*, and is used to translate the Infinitive Mood and Gerunds, and means 'the act of advising,' and is therefore a Substantive; but (2) as a translation of the Participle monens it is used Adjectivally, and must always agree with some Substantive or Pronoun.

Note on the Ablative Absolute. This usually consists of a Noun and a Participle both in the Ablative Case, but is construed without any Ablative Sign, as, Caesare monente, Caesar *advising.*

§ 52. THIRD CONJUGATION. ACTIVE VOICE.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.	PRESENT TENSE.	1 p. S.	rĕg-o, *I rule, am ruling,* or *do rule.*
		2 p. S.	reg-is, *Thou rulest,* etc.
		3 p. S.	reg-it, *He, she, it rules.*
		1 p. Pl.	reg-ĭmus, *We rule.*
		2 p. Pl.	reg-itis, *Ye* or *you rule.*
		3 p. Pl.	reg-unt, *They rule.*
	FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.	1 p. S.	reg-am, *I shall rule.*
		2 p. S.	reg-es, *Thou wilt rule.*
		3 p. S.	reg-et, *He, she, it will rule.*
		1 p. Pl.	reg-ēmus, *We shall rule.*
		2 p. Pl.	reg-etis, *Ye* or *you will rule.*
		3 p. Pl.	reg-ent, *They will rule.*
	PERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	rex-i, *I have ruled.*
		2 p. S.	rex-isti, *Thou hast ruled.*
		3 p. S.	rex-it, *He, she, it has ruled.*
		1 p. Pl.	rex-ĭmus, *We have ruled.*
		2 p. Pl.	rex-istis, *Ye* or *you have ruled.*
		3 p. Pl.	rex-ērunt *or* -ēre, *They have ruled.*

	FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	rex-ĕro, *I shall have ruled.*
		2 p. S.	rex-eris, *Thou wilt have ruled.*
		3 p. S.	rex-erit, *He, she, it will have ruled.*
		1 p. Pl.	rex-erĭmus, *We shall have ruled.*
		2 p. Pl.	rex-erĭtis, *Ye* or *you will have ruled.*
		3 p. Pl.	rex-erint, *They will have ruled.*
Historic Tenses.	IMPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	reg-ēbam, *I was ruling, I ruled, used to rule,* or *began*
		2 p. S.	reg-ebas, *Thou wast ruling.* [*to rule.*
		3 p. S.	reg-ebat, *He, she, it was ruling.*
		1 p. Pl.	reg-ebāmus, *We were ruling.*
		2 p. Pl.	reg-ebatis, *Ye* or *you were ruling.*
		3 p. Pl.	reg-ebant, *They were ruling.*
	SIMPLE-PAST TENSE.	1 p. S.	rex-i, *I ruled* or *did rule.*
		2 p. S.	rex-isti, *Thou ruledst,* etc.
		3 p. S.	rex-it, *He, she, it ruled.*
		1 p. Pl.	rex-ĭmus, *We ruled.*
		2 p. Pl.	rex-istis, *Ye* or *you ruled.*
		3 p. Pl.	rex-ērunt *or* -ēre, *They ruled.*
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	rex-ĕram, *I had ruled.*
		2 p. S.	rex-eras, *Thou hadst ruled.*
		3 p. S.	rex-erat, *He, she, it had ruled.*
		1 p. Pl.	rex-erāmus, *We had ruled.*
		2 p. Pl.	rex-eratis, *Ye* or *you had ruled.*
		3 p. Pl.	rex-erant, *They had ruled.*

THIRD CONJUGATION. ACTIVE VOICE.

VERB FINITE.

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.	PRESENT TENSE.	1 p. S.	reg-am, *I may rule, may I rule,* or *let me rule.*
		2 p. S.	reg-as, *Thou mayst rule.*
		3 p. S.	reg-at, *He, she, it may rule.*
		1 p. Pl.	reg-āmus, *We may rule,* etc.
		2 p. Pl.	reg-atis, *Ye* or *you may rule.*
		3 p. Pl.	reg-ant, *They may rule.*
	FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.	1 p. S.	The Future Simple in this Mood is formed by combining the Future Participle with *sim* or *essem*, as, *recturus sim* or *essem.* (The form *recturus essem* belongs to the Historic Tenses.)
		2 p. S.	
		3 p. S.	
		1 p. Pl.	
		2 p. Pl.	
		3 p. Pl.	
	PERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	rex-ĕrim, *I may have ruled.*
		2 p. S.	rex-eris, *Thou mayst have ruled.*
		3 p. S.	rex-erit, *He, she, it may have ruled.*
		1 p. Pl.	rex-erĭmus, *We may have ruled.*
		2 p. Pl.	rex-erĭtis, *Ye* or *you may have ruled.*
		3 p. Pl.	rex-erint, *They may have ruled.*

Historic Tenses.	IMPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	reg-ĕrem, *I should* or *might rule.*
		2 p. S.	reg-eres, *Thou wouldst rule.*
		3 p. S.	reg-eret, *He, she, it would rule.*
		1 p. Pl.	reg-ĕrēmus, *We should rule.*
		2 p. Pl.	reg-eretis, *Ye* or *you would rule.*
		3 p. Pl.	reg-erent, *They would rule.*
	SIMPLE-PAST TENSE.	1 p. S.	Rendered variously by *rexerim, regerem,* and *rexissem.* See § 76. 58, *Note.*
		2 p. S.	
		3 p. S.	
		1 p. Pl.	
		2 p. Pl.	
		3 p. Pl.	
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	rex-issem, *I should* or *might have ruled.*
		2 p. S.	rex-isses, *Thou wouldst have ruled.*
		3 p. S.	rex-isset, *He, she, it would have ruled.*
		1 p. Pl.	rex-issēmus, *We should have ruled.*
		2 p. Pl.	rex-issetis, *Ye* or *you would have ruled.*
		3 p. Pl.	rex-issent, *They would have ruled.*

THIRD CONJUGATION. ACTIVE VOICE.

VERB FINITE.

Primary Tense

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	1 p. S.	
	2 p. S.	reg-ĕ, reg-ĭto, *rule thou.*
	3 p. S.	reg-at, reg-ĭto, *let him rule.*
	1 p. Pl.	reg-āmus, *let us rule.*
	2 p. Pl.	reg-ĭte, reg-ĭtōte, *rule ye.*
	3 p. Pl.	reg-ant, reg-unto, *let them rule.*

VERB INFINITE.

Infinitive Mood.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT,	reg-ĕre, *ruling*, or *to rule.* It means literally '*the act of ruling.*'
PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT,	rex-isse, *to have ruled.*
SIMPLE-PAST,	(wanting), *see Note.*
FUTURE,	rect-ūrus esse, *to be about to rule.*

VERB INFINITE (*continued*).

Gerunds.

ACCUSATIVE,	reg-endum, *ruling.* (Used after Prepositions governing the Accusative.)
GENITIVE,	reg-endi, *of ruling.*
DAT. ABL.	reg-endo, *for* or *by ruling.*

Supines.

in -um	rect-um, *to rule.* (Only used after Verbs of *motion.*)
in -u	rect-u, *in ruling.*

Participles.

PRESENT,	reg-ens, *ruling* (declined like in-gens).
PERFECT,	(wanting). The meaning '*having ruled*' may be rendered by quum with Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, as, quum rexerit *or* rexisset.
FUTURE,	rect-ūrus, *being about to rule.*

Note on **do** *and* **did.** These Old English signs of the Present and Simple Past are now chiefly used in the Negative and Interrogative forms, as, I *do* not rule, I *did* not rule; *do* I rule? *did* I rule, etc.

Note on the Imperfect Indicative. The translation *I ruled* can only be used of regebam when it means, *I was ruling at the time.*

Note on the Finite Verb. The Pronouns, *he, she, it,* and *they,* are implied in the endings of the Third Person, as, reget, *he will rule;* but if a Noun is supplied as Subject to the Verb, the Pronoun is omitted in translation, as, Caesar reget, *Caesar will rule,* not, *Caesar he will rule.*

Note on Impersonal Verbs. Verbs in the Third Person Singular, which have the word *it* for their apparent Nominative in English, are called Impersonal Verbs, as, oportet, *it is necessary.*

Note on the Subjunctive Mood. The Subjunctive Mood is known generally by the signs *may, may have, should, should have;* but in dependent sentences, and when governed by certain Conjunctions, it must often be construed as an Indicative, as, Tam potens est Deus ut omnia regat, *God is so powerful that he rules all things.*

Note on the Accusative and Infinitive. After Impersonal Verbs, and Verbs of declaring, perceiving, or thinking, the construction called the Accusative and Infinitive is frequently found. The rule for translating it is:—construe the Accusative as if it were a Nominative, and the Infinitive as if it were a Finite Verb, and prefix the word *that,* as, Dicit Caesarem recturum esse, *He says that Caesar will rule.*

Note on the Infinitive Simple Past. This Tense only occurs in the Accusative and Infinitive construction. It is rendered by *rexisse* or *regere;* by *rexisse* if the governing Verb is a Primary Tense, by *regere* if it is Historic.

Note on the Termination in **-ing.** The word rul-*ing* is (1) the old Infinitive rul-*en, to rule,* and is used to translate the Infinitive Mood and Gerunds, and means 'the act of ruling,' and is therefore a Substantive; but (2) as a translation of the Participle regens it is used Adjectivally, and must always agree with some Substantive or Pronoun.

Note on the Ablative Absolute. This usually consists of a Noun and a Participle both in the Ablative Case, but is construed *without any* Ablative sign, as, Caesare recturo, Caesar being *about to rule.*

§ 53. FOURTH CONJUGATION. ACTIVE VOICE.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.	PRESENT TENSE.	1 p. S.	aud-īo, *I hear, am hearing*, or *do hear.*
		2 p. S.	aud-is, *Thou hearest*, etc.
		3 p. S.	aud-it, *He, she, it hears.*
		1 p. Pl.	aud-īmus, *We hear.*
		2 p. Pl.	aud-itis, *Ye* or *you hear.*
		3 p. Pl.	aud-iunt, *They hear.*
	FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.	1 p. S.	aud-īam, *I shall hear.*
		2 p. S.	aud-ies, *Thou wilt hear.*
		3 p. S.	aud-iet, *He, she, it will hear.*
		1 p. Pl.	aud-iēmus, *We shall hear.*
		2 p. Pl.	aud-ietis, *Ye* or *you will hear.*
		3 p. Pl.	aud-ient, *They will hear.*
	PERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	audīv-i, *I have heard.*
		2 p. S.	audiv-isti, *Thou hast heard.*
		3 p. S.	audiv-it, *He, she, it has heard.*
		1 p. Pl.	audiv-īmus, *We have heard.*
		2 p. Pl.	audiv-istis, *Ye* or *you have heard.*
		3 p. Pl.	audiv-ērunt *or* -ēre, *They have heard.*

	FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	audīv-ĕro, *I shall have heard.*
		2 p. S.	audiv-eris, *Thou wilt have heard.*
		3 p. S.	audiv-erit, *He, she, it will have heard.*
		1 p. Pl.	audiv-erĭmus, *We shall have heard.*
		2 p. Pl.	audiv-erĭtis, *Ye* or *you will have heard.*
		3 p. Pl.	audiv-erint, *They will have heard.*
Historic Tenses.	IMPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	aud-īēbam, *I was hearing, I heard, used to hear,* or
		2 p. S.	aud-iebas, *Thou wast hearing.* [*began to hear.*
		3 p. S.	aud-iebat, *He, she, it was hearing.*
		1 p. Pl.	aud-iebāmus, *We were hearing.*
		2 p. Pl.	aud-iebatis, *Ye* or *you were hearing.*
		3 p. Pl.	aud-iebant, *They were hearing.*
	SIMPLE-PAST TENSE.	1 p. S.	audīv-i, *I heard* or *did hear.*
		2 p. S.	audiv-isti, *Thou heardest.*
		3 p. S.	audiv-it, *He, she, it heard.*
		1 p. Pl.	audiv-ĭmus, *We heard.*
		2 p. Pl.	audiv-istis, *Ye* or *you heard.*
		3 p. Pl.	audiv-ērunt *or* -ēre, *They heard.*
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	audīv-ĕram, *I had heard.*
		2 p. S.	audiv-eras, *Thou hadst heard.*
		3 p. S.	audiv-erat, *He, she, it had heard.*
		1 p. Pl.	audiv-erāmus, *We had heard.*
		2 p. Pl.	audiv-eratis, *Ye* or *you had heard.*
		3 p. Pl.	audiv-erant, *They had heard.*

Fourth Conjugation. Active Voice.

VERB FINITE.

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.	Present Tense.	1 p. S.	aud-ĭam, *I may hear, may I hear,* or *let me hear.*
		2 p. S.	aud-ias, *Thou mayst hear.*
		3 p. S.	aud-iat, *He, she, it may hear.*
		1 p. Pl.	aud-iāmus, *We may hear.*
		2 p. Pl.	aud-iatis, *Ye* or *you may hear.*
		3 p. Pl.	aud-iant, *They may hear.*
	Future-Simple Tense.	1 p. S.	The Future Simple in this Mood is formed by combining the Future Participle with *sim* or *essem*, as, *auditurus sim* or *essem.* (The form *auditurus essem* belongs to the Historic Tenses.)
		2 p. S.	
		3 p. S.	
		1 p. Pl.	
		2 p. Pl.	
		3 p. Pl.	
	Perfect Tense.	1 p. S.	audīv-ĕrim, *I may have heard.*
		2 p. S.	audiv-eris, *Thou mayst have heard.*
		3 p. S.	audiv-erit, *He, she, it may have heard.*
		1 p. Pl.	audiv-erĭmus, *We may have heard.*
		2 p. Pl.	audiv-erĭtis, *Ye* or *you may have heard.*
		3 p. Pl.	audiv-erint, *They may have heard.*

Historic Tenses.	IMPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	aud-īrem, *I should* or *might hear.*
		2 p. S.	aud-ires, *Thou shouldst hear.*
		3 p. S.	aud-iret, *He, she, it would hear.*
		1 p. Pl.	aud-irēmus, *We should hear.*
		2 p. Pl.	aud-iretis, *Ye* or *you would hear.*
		3 p. Pl.	aud-irent, *They would hear.*
	SIMPLE-PAST TENSE.	1 p. S.	Rendered variously by *audiverim*, *audirem*, and *audivissem*. See § 76. 58, *Note.*
		2 p. S.	
		3 p. S.	
		1 p. Pl.	
		2 p. Pl.	
		3 p. Pl.	
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	audiv-issem, *I should* or *might have heard.*
		2 p. S.	audiv-isses, *Thou wouldst have heard.*
		3 p. S.	audiv-isset, *He, she, it would have heard.*
		1 p. Pl.	audiv-issēmus, *We should have heard.*
		2 p. Pl.	audiv-issetis, *Ye* or *you would have heard.*
		3 p. Pl.	audiv-issent, *They would have heard.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION. ACTIVE VOICE.

VERB FINITE.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Primary Tense. — PRESENT TENSE.

1 p. S.	
2 p. S.	aud-i, aud-īto, *hear thou.*
3 p. S.	aud-iat, aud-īto, *let him hear.*
1 p. Pl.	aud-iāmus, *let us hear.*
2 p. Pl.	aud-īte, aud-ītōte, *hear ye.*
3 p. Pl.	aud-iant, aud-iunto, *let them hear.*

VERB INFINITE.

Infinitive Mood.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT,	aud-īre, *hearing*, or *to hear.* It means literally '*the act of hearing.*'
PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT,	audīv-isse, *to have heard.*
SIMPLE-PAST,	(wanting), *see Note.*
FUTURE,	audītūrus esse, *to be about to hear.*

VERB INFINITE (*continued*).

Gerunds.

ACCUSATIVE,	aud-iendum, *hearing.* (Used after Prepositions governing the Accusative.)
GENITIVE,	aud-iendi, *of hearing.*
DAT. ABL.,	aud-iendo, *for* or *by hearing.*

Supines.

in -um,	aud-itum, *to hear.* (Only used after Verbs of *motion*).
in -u,	aud-ītu, *in hearing.*

Participles.

PRESENT,	aud-iens, *hearing* (declined like ingens).
PERFECT,	(wanting). The meaning '*having heard*' may be rendered by quum with Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, as, quum audiverit or audivisset.
FUTURE,	aud-ītūrus, *being about to hear.*

Note on **do** *and* **did.** These Old English signs of the Present and Simple Past are now chiefly used in the Negative and Interrogative forms, as, I *do* not hear, I *did* not hear; *do* I hear? *did* I hear? etc.

Note on the Imperfect Indicative. The translation *I heard* can only be used of audiebam when it means, *I was hearing at the time.*

Note on the Finite Verb. The Pronouns *he*, *she*, *it*, and *they*, are implied in the endings of the Third Person, as, audivit, *He heard;* but if a Noun is supplied as Subject to the Verb, the Pronoun is omitted in translation, as, Caesar audivit, *Caesar heard*, not, *Caesar he heard.*

Note on Impersonal Verbs. Verbs in the Third Person Singular, which have the word *it* for their apparent Nominative in English, are called Impersonal Verbs, as, convĕnit, *it suits.*

Note on the Subjunctive Mood. The Subjunctive Mood is known generally by the signs *may, may have, should, should have;* but in dependent sentences, and when governed by certain Conjunctions, it must often be construed as an Indicative, as, Quum audivissem, *When I had heard.*

Note on the Accusative and Infinitive. After Impersonal Verbs, and Verbs of declaring, perceiving, or thinking, the construction called the Accusative and Infinitive is frequently found. The rule for translating it is:—construe the Accusative as if it were a Nominative, and the Infinitive as if it were a Finite Verb, and prefix the word *that*, as, Sentit Caesarem audivisse, *He perceives that Caesar has heard.*

Note on the Infinitive Simple Past. This tense only occurs in the Accusative and Infinitive construction. It is rendered by *audivisse* or *audire;* by *audivisse* if the governing Verb is a Primary Tense, by *audire* if it is Historic.

Note on the Termination in **-ing.** The word hear-*ing* is (1) the old Infinitive hear-*en*, *to hear*, and is used to translate the Infinitive Mood and Gerunds, and means 'the act of hearing,' and is therefore a Substantive; but (2) as a translation of the Participle, audiens, it is used Adjectivally, and must always agree with some Substantive or Pronoun.

Note on the Ablative Absolute. This usually consists of a Noun and a Participle, both in the Ablative Case, but is construed without any Ablative sign, as, Caesare audiente, Caesar hearing.

§ 54. FIRST CONJUGATION. PASSIVE VOICE.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.	PRESENT TENSE.	1 p. S.	ăm-or, *I am loved* or *am being loved.*
		2 p. S.	am-āris *or* -ārĕ, *Thou art loved.*
		3 p. S.	am-atur, *He, she, it is loved.*
		1 p. Pl.	am-amur, *We are loved.*
		2 p. Pl.	am-amĭni, *Ye* or *you are loved.*
		3 p. Pl.	am-antur, *They are loved.*
	FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.	1 p. S.	am-ābor, *I shall be loved.*
		2 p. S.	am-abĕris *or* -abĕre, *Thou wilt be loved.*
		3 p. S.	am-abĭtur, *He, she, it will be loved.*
		1 p. Pl.	am-abĭmur, *We shall be loved.*
		2 p. Pl.	am-abĭmĭni, *Ye* or *you will be loved.*
		3 p. Pl.	am-abuntur, *They will be loved.*
	PERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	am-ātus sum[1], *I have been loved.*
		2 p. S.	am-atus es, *Thou hast been loved.*
		3 p. S.	am-atus est, *He has been loved.*
		1 p. Pl.	am-ati sŭmus, *We have been loved.*
		2 p. Pl.	am-ati estis, *Ye* or *you have been loved.*
		3 p. Pl.	am-ati sunt, *They have been loved.*

[1] or fui, fuisti, etc.

	FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.	2 p. S.	am-atus eris, *Thou wilt have been loved.*
		3 p. S.	am-atus erit, *He will have been loved.*
		1 p. Pl.	am-ati erĭmus, *We shall have been loved.*
		2 p. Pl.	am-ati erĭtis, *Ye* or *you will have been loved.*
		3 p. Pl.	am-ati erunt, *They will have been loved.*
Historic Tenses.	IMPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	am-ābar, *I was being loved, I was loved, used to be loved,* or *began to be loved.*
		2 p. S.	am-abāris *or* -abāre, *Thou wast being loved.*
		3 p. S.	am-abatur, *He, she, it was being loved.*
		1 p. Pl.	am-abamur, *We were being loved.*
		2 p. Pl.	am-abamĭni, *Ye* or *you were being loved.*
		3 p. Pl.	am-abantur, *They were being loved.*
	SIMPLE-PAST TENSE.	1 p. S.	am-atus sum[2], *I was loved.*
		2 p. S.	am-atus es, *Thou wast loved.*
		3 p. S.	am-atus est, *He was loved.*
		1 p. Pl.	am-ati sŭmus, *We were loved.*
		2 p. Pl.	am-ati estis, *Ye* or *you were loved.*
		3 p. Pl.	am-ati sunt, *They were loved.*
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	am-atus ĕram[3], *I had been loved.*
		2 p. S.	am-atus eras, *Thou hadst been loved.*
		3 p. S.	am-atus erat, *He had been loved.*
		1 p. Pl.	am-ati erāmus, *We had been loved.*
		2 p. Pl.	am-ati eratis, *Ye* or *you had been loved.*
		3 p. Pl.	am-ati erant, *They had been loved.*

[1] *or* fuĕro, etc. [2] *or* fui, etc. [3] *or* fuĕram, etc.

First Conjugation. Passive Voice.

VERB FINITE.

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.	Present Tense.	1 p. S.	am-er, *I may be loved, may I be loved,* or *let me be*
		2 p. S.	am-ēris *or* -ēre, *Thou mayst be loved,* etc. [*loved.*
		3 p. S.	am-etur, *He she, it may be loved.*
		1 p. Pl.	am-emur, *We may be loved.*
		2 p. Pl.	am-emini, *Ye* or *you may be loved.*
		3 p. Pl.	am-entur, *They may be loved.*
	Future-Simple Tense.	1 p. S.	(wanting). See § 77. 49.
		2 p. S.	
		3 p. S.	
		1 p. Pl.	
		2 p. Pl.	
		3 p. Pl.	
	Perfect Tense.	1 p. S.	amatus sim[1], *I may have been loved.*
		2 p. S.	amatus sis, *Thou mayst have been loved.*
		3 p. S.	amatus sit, *He may have been loved.*
		1 p. Pl.	amati sīmus, *We may have been loved.*
		2 p. Pl.	amati sitis, *Ye* or *you may been loved.*
		3 p. Pl.	amati sint, *They may have been loved.*

Historic Tenses.	IMPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	am-ārer, *I should* or *might be loved.*
		2 p. S.	am-arēris *or* -arēre, *Thou wouldst be loved.*
		3 p. S.	am-aretur, *He, she, it would be loved.*
		1 p. Pl.	am-aremur, *We should be loved.*
		2 p. Pl.	am-aremini, *Ye* or *you would be loved.*
		3 p. Pl.	am-arentur, *They would be loved.*
	SIMPLE-PAST TENSE.	1 p. S.	Rendered variously by *amatus sim*, *amarer*, and *amatus essem.* See § 76. 58, *Note.*
		2 p. S.	
		3 p. S.	
		1 p. Pl.	
		2 p. Pl.	
		3 p. Pl.	
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	amatus essem[1], *I should* or *might have been loved.*
		2 p. S.	amatus esses, *Thou wouldst have been loved.*
		3 p. S.	amatus esset, *He would have been loved.*
		1 p. Pl.	amati essēmus, *We should have been loved.*
		2 p. Pl.	amati essetis, *Ye* or *you would have been loved.*
		3 p. Pl.	amati essent, *They would have been loved.*

[1] *or* fuissem, etc.

VERB FINITE.

Primary Tense.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	1 p. S.	
	2 p. S.	am-āre, am-ātor, *be thou loved.*
	3 p. S.	am-ētur, am-ātor, *let him be loved.*
	1 p. Pl.	am-ēmur, *let us be loved.*
	2 p. Pl.	am-āmĭni, am-āmĭnor, *be ye loved.*
	3 p. Pl.	am-entur, am-antor, *let them be loved.*

VERB INFINITE.

Infinitive Mood.	PRESENT AND IMPERFECT,	am-āri, *to be loved.*
	PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT,	amātus esse *or* fuisse, *to have been loved.*
	SIMPLE-PAST,	(wanting).
	FUTURE,	amātum īri, *to be about to be loved.*
Participles.	PRESENT,	(wanting). The meaning *'whilst being loved'* may be rendered by *dum* with Pres. Indicative, as, dum amatur.
	PERFECT,	amātus, *loved, being loved,* or *having been loved.*
	FUTURE,	(wanting).
	GERUNDIVE,	am-andus, *that must be loved.*

Note on **amatus est**, etc. In all Tenses compounded of the Participle *amatus* and the Auxiliary Verb *sum*, the Participle is made to agree in Gender and Number with the Subject of the Verb, as, Bellum amat*um* est, *War was loved;* Mulieres amat*ae* sunt, *The women were loved.*

Note on the Gerundive. The Gerundive may, as a rule, be rendered in English by the word *must* or *ought*, and is usually Passive in meaning, as, Puer amandus est, *The boy must be loved;* literally, *The boy is one who must be loved.* The following constructions, which require to be translated by an Active form in English, should however be noticed.

(1) Amandum est, *I, thou, he, she, it, we, you,* or *they must love;* literally, *it must be loved by me, thee, him,* etc. Sometimes the Latin Pronoun is added in the Dative Case, as, Amandum est mihi, *I must love*, Amandum est tibi, *Thou must love*, etc.

(2) In bellis gerendis, *In waging wars.* The Gerundive in agreement with the Oblique Cases of a Substantive is often translated as a Gerund.

Note on the Formation of certain Tenses. From amav-i, the Perfect Active, are formed the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative, amav-eram, amav-ero; the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive, amav-erim, amav-issem; and the Perfect Infinitive, amav-isse. From amatum, the Supine (a Verb-Noun of the Fourth Declension having two cases, amatum and amatu), is formed the Future Infinitive Passive, amatum iri, meaning, *to be gone to love* (like the English phrase, 'he is gone a begging'), and similar in form are the Future Participle Active, amaturus, and the Perfect Participle Passive, amatus, the latter being, however, declined like bonus, -a, -um, not like amatum, amatu.

N.B. The Notes on the Finite Verb, Subjunctive Mood, etc. which were given with the Active Forms, apply equally to the Passive

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.	PRESENT TENSE.	1 p. S.	mŏn-ĕor, *I am advised,* or *am being advised.*
		2 p. S.	mon-ēris *or* -ēre, *Thou art advised.*
		3 p. S.	mon-etur, *He, she, it is advised.*
		1 p. Pl.	mon-emur, *We are advised.*
		2 p. Pl.	mon-emĭni, *Ye* or *you are advised.*
		3 p. Pl.	mon-entur, *They are advised.*
	FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.	1 p. S.	mon-ēbor, *I shall be advised.*
		2 p. S.	mon-ēbĕris *or* -ēbĕre, *Thou wilt be advised.*
		3 p. S.	mon-ebitur, *He, she, it will be advised.*
		1 p. Pl.	mon-ēbĭmur, *We shall be advised.*
		2 p. Pl.	mon-ebimini, *Ye* or *you will be advised.*
		3 p. Pl.	mon-ebuntur, *They will be advised.*
	PERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	monĭtus sum[1], *I have been advised.*
		2 p. S.	monitus es, *Thou hast been advised.*
		3 p. S.	monitus est, *He has been advised.*
		1 p. Pl.	moniti sŭmus, *We have been advised.*
		2 p. Pl.	moniti estis, *Ye* or *you have been advised.*
		3 p. Pl.	moniti sunt, *They have been advised.*

[1] *or* fui, etc.

	Future-Perfect Tense.	2 p. S.	monitus eris, *Thou will have been advised.*
		3 p. S.	monitus erit, *He will have been advised.*
		1 p. Pl.	moniti erĭmus, *We shall have been advised.*
		2 p. Pl.	moniti eritis, *Ye* or *you will have been advised.*
		3 p. Pl.	moniti erunt, *They will have been advised.*
Historic Tenses.	Imperfect Tense.	1 p. S.	mon-ēbar, *I was being advised, I was advised, used to be advised,* or *began to be advised.*
		2 p. S.	mon-ebāris *or* -ebare, *Thou wast being advised.*
		3 p. S.	mon-ebatur, *He, she, it was being advised.*
		1 p. Pl.	mon-ebamur, *We were being advised.*
		2 p. Pl.	mon-ebamini, *Ye* or *you were being advised.*
		3 p. Pl.	mon-ebantur, *They were being advised.*
	Simple-Past Tense.[1]	1 p. S.	monitus sum[2], *I was advised.*
		2 p. S.	monitus es, *Thou wast advised.*
		3 p. S.	monitus est, *He was advised.*
		1 p. Pl.	moniti sŭmus, *We were advised.*
		2 p. Pl.	moniti estis, *Ye* or *you were advised.*
		3 p. Pl.	moniti sunt, *They were advised.*
	Pluperfect Tense.	1 p. S.	monitus eram[3], *I had been advised.*
		2 p. S.	monitus eras, *Thou hadst been advised.*
		3 p. S.	monitus erat, *He had been advised.*
		1 p. Pl.	moniti erāmus, *We had been advised.*
		2 p. Pl.	moniti eratis, *Ye* or *you had been advised.*
		3 p. Pl.	moniti erant, *They had been advised.*

[1] *or* fuĕre, etc. [2] *or* fui, etc. [3] *or* fuĕram, etc.

Second Conjugation. Passive Voice.

VERB FINITE.

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.			
Primary Tenses.	Present Tense.	1 p. S.	mon-ĕar, *I may be advised, may I be advised,* or *let me be advised.*
		2 p. S.	mon-ĕāris *or* -ĕāre, *Thou mayst be advised.*
		3 p. S.	mon-eatur, *He, she, it may be advised.*
		1 p. Pl.	mon-eamur, *We may be advised.*
		2 p. Pl.	mon-eamini, *Ye* or *you may be advised.*
		3 p. Pl.	mon-eantur, *They may be advised.*
	Future-Simple Tense.	1 p. S.	(wanting). See § 77. 49.
		2 p. S.	
		3 p. S.	
		1 p. Pl.	
		2 p. Pl.	
		3 p. Pl.	
	Perfect Tense.	1 p. S.	monitus sim[1], *I may have been advised.*
		2 p. S.	monitus sis, *Thou mayst have been advised.*
		3 p. S.	monitus sit, *He may have been advised.*
		1 p. Pl.	moniti sīmus, *We may have been advised.*
		2 p. Pl.	moniti sitis, *Ye* or *you may have been advised.*
		3 p. Pl.	moniti sint, *They may have been advised.*

[1] or fuerim, etc.

Historic Tenses.	IMPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	mon-ērer, *I should* or *might be advised.*
		2 p. S.	mon-erēris *or* -erēre, *Thou wouldst be advised.*
		3 p. S.	mon-eretur, *He, she, it would be advised.*
		1 p. Pl.	mon-erēmur, *We should be advised.*
		2 p. Pl.	mon-eremini, *Ye* or *you would be advised.*
		3 p. Pl.	mon-erentur, *They would be advised.*
	SIMPLE-PAST TENSE.	1 p. S.	Rendered variously by *monitus sim, monerer,* and *monitus essem.* See 76. 58, *Note.*
		2 p. S.	
		3 p. S.	
		1 p. Pl.	
		2 p. Pl.	
		3 p. Pl.	
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	monitus essem [1], *I should have been advised.*
		2 p. S.	monitus esses, *Thou wouldst have been advised.*
		3 p. S.	monitus esset, *He would have been advised.*
		1 p. Pl.	moniti essemus, *We should have been advised.*
		2 p. Pl.	moniti essetis, *Ye* or *you would have been advised.*
		3 p. Pl.	moniti essent, *They would have been advised.*

[1] *or* fuissem, etc.

VERB FINITE.

Primary Tense.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	1 p. S.	
	2 p. S.	mon-ēre, mon-ētor, *be thou [advised.*
	3 p. S.	mon-eātur, mon-ētor, *let him [be advised.*
	1 p. Pl.	mon-eāmur, *let us be advised.*
	2 p. Pl.	mon-ēmĭni, mon-ēmĭnor, *be [ye advised.*
	3 p. Pl.	mon-eantur, mon-entor, *let [them be advised.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Infinitive Mood.	PRESENT AND IMPERFECT,	mon-ēri, *to be advised.*
	PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT,	monĭtus esse *or* fuisse, *to have been advised.*
	SIMPLE-PAST,	(wanting).
	FUTURE,	monĭtum iri, *to be about to be advised.*
Participles.	PRESENT,	(wanting). The meaning '*whilst being advised*' may be rendered by *dum* with Present Indicative, as, dum monetur.
	PERFECT,	monĭtus, *advised, being advised,* or *having been advised.*
	FUTURE,	(wanting).
	GERUNDIVE,	mon-endus, *that must be advised.*

Note on **monitus est,** etc. In all Tenses compounded of the Participle *monitus* and the Auxiliary Verb *sum*, the Participle is made to agree in Gender and Number with the Subject of the Verb, as, Regina monit*a* erat, *The queen had been advised.*

Note on the Gerundive. The Gerundive may, as a rule, be rendered in English by the word *must* or *ought*, and is usually Passive in meaning, as, Regina monenda est, *The queen must be advised;* literally, *The queen is one who must be advised.* The following constructions, which require to be translated by an Active form in English, should however be noticed.

(1) Monendum est, *I, thou, he, she, it, we, you,* or *they must advise;* literally, *advice must be given by me, thee, him,* etc. Sometimes the Latin Pronoun is added in the Dative Case, as, Monendum est mihi, *I must advise;* Monendum est tibi, *Thou must advise*, etc.

(2) Amor virtutis exercendae, *The love of practising virtue.* The Gerundive in agreement with the Oblique Cases of a Substantive is often translated as a Gerund.

Note on the Formation of certain Tenses. From monu-i, the Perfect Active, are formed the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative, monu-eram, monu-ero; the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive, monu-erim, monu-issem; and the Perfect Infinitive, monu-isse. From monitum, the Supine (a Verb-Noun of the Fourth Declension having two cases, monitum and monitu), is formed the Future Infinitive Passive, monitum iri, meaning, *to be gone to advise*, and similar in form are the Future Participle Active, moniturus, and the Perfect Participle Passive, monitus, the latter being, however, delined like bonus, -a, -um, not like monitum, monitu.

N.B. The Notes on the Finite Verb, Subjunctive Mood, etc. which were given with the Active forms, apply equally to *the Passive.*

§ 56. THIRD CONJUGATION. PASSIVE VOICE.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.	PRESENT TENSE.	1 p. S.	rĕg-or, *I am ruled*, or *am being ruled.*
		2 p. S.	reg-ĕris *or* -ĕre, *Thou art ruled.*
		3 p. S.	reg-ĭtur, *He, she, it is ruled.*
		1 p. Pl.	reg-ĭmur, *We are ruled.*
		2 p. Pl.	reg-ĭmĭni, *Ye* or *you are ruled.*
		3 p. Pl.	reg-untur, *They are ruled.*
	FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.	1 p. S.	reg-ar, *I shall be ruled.*
		2 p. S.	reg-ēris *or* -ēre, *Thou wilt be ruled.*
		3 p. S.	reg-ētur, *He, she, it will be ruled.*
		1 p. Pl.	reg-ēmur, *We shall be ruled.*
		2 p. Pl.	reg-ēmĭni, *Ye* or *you will be ruled.*
		3 p. Pl.	reg-entur, *They will be ruled.*
	PERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	rectus sum[1], *I have been ruled.*
		2 p. S.	rectus es, *Thou hast been ruled.*
		3 p. S.	rectus est, *He has been ruled.*
		1 p. Pl.	recti sŭmus, *We have been ruled.*
		2 p. Pl.	recti estis, *Ye* or *you have been ruled.*
		3 p. Pl.	recti sunt, *They have been ruled.*

[1] or fui, etc.

	Future-Perfect Tense.	1 p. S.	rectus erō [1], *I shall have been ruled.*
		2 p. S.	rectus eris, *Thou wilt have been ruled.*
		3 p. S.	rectus erit, *He will have been ruled.*
		1 p. Pl.	recti erĭmus, *We shall have been ruled.*
		2 p. Pl.	recti erĭtis, *Ye* or *you will have been ruled.*
		3 p. Pl.	recti erunt, *They will have been ruled.*
Historic Tenses.	Imperfect Tense.	1 p. S.	reg-ēbar, *I was being ruled, I was ruled, used to be ruled,* or *began to be ruled.*
		2 p. S.	reg-ēbāris *or* -ēbāre, *Thou wast being ruled.*
		3 p. S.	reg-ebatur, *He, she, it was being ruled.*
		1 p. Pl.	reg-ebamur, *We were being ruled.*
		2 p. Pl.	reg-ebamĭni, *Ye* or *you were being ruled.*
		3 p. Pl.	reg-ebantur, *They were being ruled.*
	Simple-Past Tense.	1 p. S.	rectus sum [2], *I was ruled.*
		2 p. S.	rectus es, *Thou wast ruled.*
		3 p. S.	rectus est, *He was ruled.*
		1 p. Pl.	recti sŭmus, *We were ruled.*
		2 p. Pl.	recti estis, *Ye* or *you were ruled.*
		3 p. Pl.	recti sunt, *They were ruled.*
	Pluperfect Tense.	1 p. S.	rectus eram [3], *I had been ruled.*
		2 p. S.	rectus eras, *Thou hadst been ruled.*
		3 p. S.	rectus erat, *He had been ruled.*
		1 p. Pl.	recti erāmus, *We had been ruled.*
		2 p. Pl.	recti eratis, *Ye* or *you had been ruled.*
		3 p. Pl.	recti erant, *They had been ruled.*

[1] *or* fuero, etc. [2] *or* fui, etc. [3] *or* fuĕram, etc.

THIRD CONJUGATION. PASSIVE VOICE.

VERB FINITE.

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.			
Primary Tenses.	PRESENT TENSE.	1 p. S.	reg-ar, *I may be ruled, may I be ruled,* or *let me be*
		2 p. S.	reg-āris *or* -āre, *Thou mayst be ruled.* [*ruled.*
		3 p. S.	reg-atur, *He, she, it may be ruled.*
		1 p. Pl.	reg-amur, *We may be ruled.*
		2 p. Pl.	reg-amĭni, *Ye* or *you may be ruled.*
		3 p. Pl.	reg-antur, *They may be ruled.*
	FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.	1 p. S.	(wanting.) See § 77. 49.
		2 p. S.	
		3 p. S.	
		1 p. Pl.	
		2 p. Pl.	
		3 p. Pl.	
	PERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	rectus sim[1], *I may have been ruled.*
		2 p. S.	rectus sis, *Thou mayst have been ruled.*
		3 p. S.	rectus sit, *He may have been ruled.*
		1 p. Pl.	recti sīmus, *We may have been ruled.*
		2 p. Pl.	recti sītis, *Ye* or *you may have been ruled.*
		3 p. Pl.	recti sint, *They may have been ruled.*

[1] or fuĕrim, etc.

Historic Tenses.	IMPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	reg-ĕrer, *I should* or *might be ruled.*
		2 p. S.	reg-ĕrēris *or* -erēre, *Thou wouldst be ruled.*
		3 p. S.	reg-eretur, *He, she, it would be ruled.*
		1 p. Pl.	reg-eremur, *We should be ruled.*
		2 p. Pl.	reg-eremini, *Ye* or *you would be ruled.*
		3 p. Pl.	reg-erentur, *They would be ruled.*
	SIMPLE-PAST TENSE.	1 p. S.	Rendered variously by *rectus sim*, *regerer*, and *rectus essem.* See § 76. 58, *Note.*
		2 p. S.	
		3 p. S	
		1 p. Pl.	
		2 p. Pl.	
		3 p. Pl.	
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	rectus essem [1], *I should have been ruled.*
		2 p. S.	rectus esses, *Thou wouldst have been ruled.*
		3 p. S.	rectus esset, *He would have been ruled.*
		1 p. Pl.	recti essēmus, *We should have been ruled.*
		2 p. Pl.	recti essētis, *Ye* or *you would have been ruled.*
		3 p. Pl.	recti essent, *They would have been ruled.*

[1] *or* fuissem, etc.

THIRD CONJUGATION. PASSIVE VOICE.

VERB FINITE.

Primary Tense.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	1 p. S.	
	2 p. S.	reg-ĕre, reg-ĭtor, *be thou ruled.*
	3 p. S.	reg-ātur, reg-itor, *let him be ruled.*
	1 p. Pl.	reg-āmur, *let us be ruled.*
	2 p. Pl.	reg-ĭmĭni, reg-ĭmĭnor, *be ye ruled.*
	3 p. Pl.	reg-antur, reg-untor, *let them be ruled.*

VERB INFINITE.

Infinitive Mood.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT,	rĕg-ī,	*to be ruled.*
PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT,	rectus esse *or* fuisse,	*to have been ruled.*
SIMPLE-PAST,	(wanting).	
FUTURE,	rectum iri,	*to be about to be ruled.*

Participles.

PRESENT,	(wanting). The meaning '*whilst being ruled*' may be rendered by *dum* with Present Indicative, as, dum regitur.
PERFECT,	rectus, *ruled, being ruled,* or *having been ruled.*
FUTURE,	(wanting).
GERUNDIVE,	regendus, *that must be ruled.*

Note on **rectus est,** etc. In all Tenses compounded of the Participle *rectus* and the Auxiliary Verb *sum* the Participle is made to agree in Gender and Number with the Subject of the Verb, as, Plebs recta erit, *The common people will have been ruled.*

Note on the Gerundive. The Gerundive may, as a rule, be rendered in English by the word *must* or *ought*, and is usually Passive in meaning, as, Civitas regenda erat, *The state ought to have been ruled;* literally, *The state was one which ought to be ruled.* The following constructions, which require to be translated by an Active form in English, should however be noticed.

(1) Regendum est, *I, thou, he, she, it, we, you,* or *they, must rule;* literally, *it must be ruled by me, thee, him,* etc. Sometimes the Latin Pronoun is added in the Dative Case, as, Regendum est mihi, *I must rule;* Regendum est tibi, *Thou must rule,* etc.

(2) Cupidus erat hominum regendorum, *He was desirous of ruling men.* The Gerundive in agreement with the Oblique Case of a Substantive is often translated as a Gerund.

Note on the Formation of certain Tenses. From rex-i, the Perfect Active, are formed the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative, rex-eram, rex-ero; the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive, rex-erim; rex-issem, and the Perfect Infinitive, rex-isse. From rectum, the Supine (a Verb-Noun of the Fourth Declension, having two Cases, rectum and rectu), is formed the Future Infinitive Passive, rectum iri, meaning *to be gone to rule,* and similar in form are the Future Participle Active, recturus, and the Perfect Participle Passive, rectus, the latter being, however, declined like bonus, -a, -um, not like rectum, rectu.

§ 57. Fourth Conjugation. Passive Voice.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.			
Primary Tenses.	Present Tense.	1 p. S.	aud-ĭor, *I am heard* or *am being heard.*
		2 p. S.	aud-īris *or* -īre, *Thou art heard.*
		3 p. S.	aud-ītur, *He, she, it is heard.*
		1 p. Pl.	aud-īmur, *We are heard.*
		2 p. Pl.	aud-īmĭni, *Ye* or *you are heard.*
		3 p. Pl.	aud-ĭuntur, *They are heard.*
	Future-Simple Tense.	1 p. S.	aud-ĭar, *I shall be heard.*
		2 p. S.	aud-ĭēris *or* -ĭēre, *Thou wilt be heard.*
		3 p. S.	aud-ĭētur, *He, she, it will be heard.*
		1 p. Pl.	aud-ĭēmur, *We shall be heard.*
		2 p. Pl.	aud-ĭēmini, *Ye* or *you will be heard.*
		3 p. Pl.	aud-ĭentur, *They will be heard.*
	Perfect Tense.	1 p. S.	audītus sum[1], *I have been heard.*
		2 p. S.	auditus es, *Thou hast been heard.*
		3 p. S.	auditus est, *He has been heard.*
		1 p. Pl.	auditi sŭmus, *We have been heard.*
		2 p. Pl.	auditi estis, *Ye* or *you have been heard.*
		3 p. Pl.	auditi sunt, *They have been heard.*

[1] *or* fui, etc.

	FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.	2 p. S.	auditus eris, *Thou wilt have been heard.*
		3 p. S.	auditus erit, *He will have been heard.*
		1 p. Pl.	auditi erĭmus, *We shall have been heard.*
		2 p. Pl.	auditi erĭtis, *Ye* or *you will have been heard.*
		3 p. Pl.	auditi erunt, *They will have been heard.*
Historic Tenses.	IMPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	aud-ĭēbar, *I was being heard, I was heard, used to be heard,* or *began to be heard.*
		2 p. S.	aud-iebāris *or* -iebāre, *Thou wast being heard.*
		3 p. S.	aud-iebatur, *He, she, it was being heard.*
		1 p. Pl.	aud-iebamur, *We were being heard.*
		2 p. Pl.	aud-iebamini, *Ye* or *you were being heard.*
		3 p. Pl.	aud-iebantur, *They were being heard.*
	SIMPLE-PAST TENSE.	1 p. S.	auditus sum[2], *I was heard.*
		2 p. S.	auditus es, *Thou wast heard.*
		3 p. S.	auditus est, *He was heard.*
		1 p. Pl.	auditi sŭmus, *We were heard.*
		2 p. Pl.	auditi estis, *Ye* or *you were heard.*
		3 p. Pl.	auditi sunt, *They were heard.*
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	auditus eram[3], *I had been heard.*
		2 p. S.	auditus eras, *Thou hadst been heard.*
		3 p. S.	auditus erat, *He had been heard.*
		1 p. Pl.	auditi erāmus, *We had been heard.*
		2 p. Pl.	auditi erātis, *Ye* or *you had been heard.*
		3 p. Pl.	auditi erant, *They had been heard.*

[1] *or* fuĕro, etc. [2] *or* fui, etc. [3] *or* fuĕram, etc.

Fourth Conjugation. Passive Voice.

VERB FINITE.

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.			
Primary Tenses.	Present Tense.	1 p. S.	aud-ĭar, *I may be heard, may I be heard,* or *let me*
		2 p. S.	aud-iāris *or* -iāre, *Thou mayst be heard.* [*be heard.*
		3 p. S.	aud-iatur, *He, she, it may be heard.*
		1 p. Pl.	aud-iamur, *We may be heard.*
		2 p. Pl.	aud-iamini, *Ye* or *you may be heard.*
		3 p. Pl.	aud-iantur, *They may be heard.*
	Future-Simple Tense.	1 p. S.	(wanting). See § 77. 49.
		2 p. S.	
		3 p. S.	
		1 p. Pl.	
		2 p. Pl.	
		3 p. Pl.	
	Perfect Tense.	1 p. S.	auditus sim[1], *I may have been heard.*
		2 p. S.	auditus sis, *Thou mayst have been heard.*
		3 p. S	auditus sit, *He may have been heard.*
		1 p. Pl.	auditi sīmus, *We may have been heard.*
		2 p. Pl.	auditi sītis, *Ye* or *you may have been heard.*
		3 p. Pl.	auditi sint, *They may have been heard.*

[1] *or* fuĕrim, etc.

Historic Tenses.	IMPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	aud-īrer, *I should* or *might be heard.*
		2 p. S.	aud-irēris *or* -irēre, *Thou wouldst be heard.*
		3 p. S.	aud-iretur, *He, she, it would be heard.*
		1 p. Pl.	aud-iremur, *We should be heard.*
		2 p. Pl.	aud-iremini, *Ye* or *you would be heard.*
		3 p. Pl.	aud-irentur, *They would be heard.*
	SIMPLE-PAST TENSE.	1 p. S.	Rendered variously by *auditus sim*, *audirer*, and *auditus essem.* See § 76. 58, *Note.*
		2 p. S.	
		3 p. S.	
		1 p. Pl.	
		2 p. Pl.	
		3 p. Pl.	
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	auditus essem[1], *I should have been heard.*
		2 p. S.	auditus esses, *Thou wouldst have been heard.*
		3 p. S.	auditus esset, *He would have been heard.*
		1 p. Pl.	auditi essēmus, *We should have been heard.*
		2 p. Pl.	auditi essetis, *Ye* or *you would have been heard.*
		3 p. Pl.	auditi essent, *They would have been heard.*

[1] *or* fuissem, etc.

Fourth Conjugation. Passive Voice.

VERB FINITE.

Primary Tense.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1 p. S.		
2 p. S.	aud-īre, aud-ītor,	*be thou heard.*
3 p. S.	aud-iātur, aud-ītor,	*let him be heard.*
1 p. Pl.		
2 p. Pl.	aud-iāmur,	*let us be heard.*
3 p. Pl.	aud-īmĭni, aud-īmĭnor,	*be ye heard.*
	aud-iantur, aud-iuntor,	*let them be heard.*

VERB INFINITE.

Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect,	aud-īri,	*to be heard.*
Perfect and Pluperfect,	aud-ītus esse *or* fuisse,	*to have been heard.*
Simple-Past,	(wanting).	
Future,	audītum iri,	*to be about to be heard.*

Participles.

Present,	(wanting). The meaning	*'whilst being heard'* may be rendered by *dum* with Present Indicative, as, dum auditur.
Perfect,	aud-ītus,	*heard, being heard,* or *having been heard.*
Future,	(wanting).	
Gerundive,	aud-ĭendus,	*that must be heard.*

Note on **auditus est**, etc. In all Tenses compounded of the Participle *auditus* and the Auxiliary Verb *sum*, the Participle is made to agree in Gender and Number with the Subject of the Verb, as, Tonitrua audit*a* sunt, *Peals-of-thunder have been heard.*

Note on the Gerundive. The Gerundive may, as a rule, be rendered in English by the word *must* or *ought*, and is usually Passive in meaning, as, Reges audiendi sunt, *Kings must be heard;* literally, *Kings are people who must be heard.* The following constructions, which require to be translated by an Active form in English, should however be noticed.

(1) Audiendum est, *I, thou, he, she, it, we, you,* or *they must hear;* literally, *it must be heard by me, thee, him,* etc. Sometimes the Latin Pronoun is added in the Dative Case, as, Audiendum est mihi, *I must hear;* Audiendum est tibi, *Thou must hear,* etc.

(2) Amor Platonis audiendi, *The love of hearing Plato.* The Gerundive in agreement with the Oblique Case of a Substantive is often translated as a Gerund.

Note on the Formation of certain Tenses. From audiv-i, the Perfect Active, are formed the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative, audiv-eram, audiv-ero; the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive, audiv-erim, audiv-issem; and the Perfect Infinitive, audiv-isse. From auditum, the Supine (a Verb-Noun of the Fourth Declension, having two cases, auditum and auditu), is formed the Future Infinitive Passive, auditum iri, meaning *to be gone to hear,* and similar in form are the Future Participle Active, auditurus, and the Perfect Participle Passive, auditus, the latter being, however, declined like bonus, -a, -um, not like auditum, auditu.

Note on Verbs in **-io** *of the Third Conjugation.* Certain Verbs in **-io**, as, fugio, capio, facio, belong to the Third Conjugation. These drop the *i* before *i*, final *e*, and short *ĕr;* as,

Indic. Pres.	fugi-o.	Imper. Pres.	fug-e *for* fugi-e.
	fug-is *for* fugi-is.		
	fug-it *for* fugi-it.	Subj. Imperf.	fug-ĕrem *for* fugi-ĕrem.
	fug-ĭmus *for* fugi-ĭmus.		
	fug-ĭtis *for* fugi-ĭtis.	Inf. Pres.	fug-ĕre *for* fugi-ere.
	fugi-unt.		

§ 58. Conjugation of a Deponent Verb, that is, a Verb which is Passive in Form but Active in Meaning.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.	Present Tense.	1 p. S.	ūt-or, *I use, am using,* or *do use.*
		2 p. S.	ut-ĕris *or* -ĕre, *Thou usest.*
		3 p. S.	ut-ĭtur, *He, she, it uses.*
		1 p. Pl.	ut-ĭmur, *We use.*
		2 p. Pl.	ut-ĭmĭni, *Ye* or *you use.*
		3 p. Pl.	ut-untur, *They use.*
	Future-Simple Tense.	1 p. S.	ut-ar, *I shall use.*
		2 p. S.	ut-ēris *or* ēre, *Thou wilt use.*
		3 p. S.	ut-etur, *He, she, it will use.*
		1 p. Pl.	ut-emur, *We shall use.*
		2 p. Pl.	ut-emini, *Ye* or *you will use.*
		3 p. Pl.	ut-entur, *They will use.*
	Perfect Tense.	1 p. S.	ūsus sum[1], *I have used.*
		2 p. S.	usus es, *Thou hast used.*
		3 p. S.	usus est, *He has used.*
		1 p. Pl.	usi sumus, *We have used.*
		2 p. Pl.	usi estis, *Ye* or *you have used.*
		3 p. Pl.	usi sunt, *They have used.*

[1] *or* fui, etc.

	FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.	3 p. S.	usus erit, *He will have used.*
		1 p. Pl.	usi erimus, *We shall have used.*
		2 p. Pl.	usi eritis, *Ye* or *you will have used.*
		3 p. Pl.	usi erunt, *They will have used.*
Historic Tenses.	IMPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	ut-ēbar, *I was using, I used, I used to use,* or *began to use.*
		2 p. S.	ut-ēbāris *or* -ēbare, *Thou wast using.*
		3 p. S.	ut-ebatur, *He, she, it was using.*
		1 p. Pl.	ut-ebamur, *We were using.*
		2 p. Pl.	ut-ebamini, *Ye* or *you were using.*
		3 p. Pl.	ut-ebantur, *They were using.*
	SIMPLE-PAST TENSE.	1 p. S.	usus sum[2], *I used.*
		2 p. S.	usus es, *Thou usedst.*
		3 p. S.	usus est, *He used.*
		1 p. Pl.	usi sumus, *We used.*
		2 p. Pl.	usi estis, *Ye* or *you used.*
		3 p. Pl.	usi sunt, *They used.*
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	usus eram[3], *I had used.*
		2 p. S.	usus eras, *Thou hadst used.*
		3 p. S.	usus erat, *He had used.*
		1 p. Pl.	usi eramus, *We had used.*
		2 p. Pl.	usi eratis, *Ye* or *you had used.*
		3 p. Pl.	usi erant, *They had used.*

[1] *or* fuĕro, etc. [2] *or* fui, etc. [3] *or* fuĕram, etc.

Conjugation of a Deponent Verb, that is, a Verb which is Passive in Form but Active in Meaning

VERB FINITE

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD

Primary Tenses.	Present Tense.	1 p. S.	ut ar, *I may love, may I love, or be in love*
		2 p. S.	ut aris or āre, *Thou mayst love*
		3 p. S.	ut atur, *He, she, it may love*
		1 p. Pl.	ut amur, *We may love*
		2 p. Pl.	ut amini, *Ye or you may love*
		3 p. Pl.	ut antur, *They may love*
	Future-Simple Tense.	1 p. S.	The Future Simple in this Mood is formed by combining the Future Participle with *sim* or *essem*, as, *usurus sim* or *essem*. (The form *usurus essem* belongs to the Historic Tenses.)
		2 p. S.	
		3 p. S.	
		1 p. Pl.	
		2 p. Pl.	
		3 p. Pl.	
	Perfect Tense.	1 p. S.	usus sim[1], *I may have used.*
		2 p. S.	usus sis, *Thou mayst have used.*
		3 p. S.	usus sit, *He may have used.*
		1 p. Pl.	usi simus, *We may have used.*
		2 p. Pl.	usi sitis, *Ye or you may have used.*
		3 p. Pl.	usi sint, *They may have used.*

[1] or fuerim, etc.

	FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.	3 p. S.	usus erit, *He will have used.*
		1 p. Pl.	usi erimus, *We shall have used.*
		2 p. Pl.	usi eritis, *Ye* or *you will have used.*
		3 p. Pl.	usi erunt, *They will have used.*
Historic Tenses.	IMPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	ut-ēbar, *I was using, I used, I used to use,* or *began to use.*
		2 p. S.	ut-ēbāris *or* -ēbare, *Thou wast using.*
		3 p. S.	ut-ebatur, *He, she, it was using.*
		1 p. Pl.	ut-ebamur, *We were using.*
		2 p. Pl.	ut-ebamini, *Ye* or *you were using.*
		3 p. Pl.	ut-ebantur, *They were using.*
	SIMPLE-PAST TENSE.	1 p. S.	usus sum[2], *I used.*
		2 p. S.	usus es, *Thou usedst.*
		3 p. S.	usus est, *He used.*
		1 p. Pl.	usi sumus, *We used.*
		2 p. Pl.	usi estis, *Ye* or *you used.*
		3 p. Pl.	usi sunt, *They used.*
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	usus eram[3], *I had used.*
		2 p. S.	usus eras, *Thou hadst used.*
		3 p. S.	usus erat, *He had used.*
		1 p. Pl.	usi eramus, *We had used.*
		2 p. Pl.	usi eratis, *Ye* or *you had used.*
		3 p. Pl.	usi erant, *They had used.*

[1] *or* fŭĕro, etc. [2] *or* fui, etc. [3] *or* fŭĕram, etc.

Conjugation of a Deponent Verb, that is, a Verb which is Passive in Form but Active in Meaning.

VERB FINITE.

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.			
Primary Tenses.	Present Tense.	1 p. S.	ut-ar, *I may use, may I use,* or *let me use.*
		2 p. S.	ut-āris *or* -āre, *Thou mayst use.*
		3 p. S.	ut-atur, *He, she, it may use.*
		1 p. Pl.	ut-amur, *We may use.*
		2 p. Pl.	ut-amini, *Ye* or *you may use.*
		3 p. Pl.	ut-antur, *They may use.*
	Future-Simple Tense.	1 p. S.	The Future Simple in this Mood is formed by combining the Future Participle with *sim* or *essem,* as, *usurus sim* or *essem.* (The form *usurus essem* belongs to the Historic Tenses.)
		2 p. S.	
		3 p. S.	
		1 p. Pl.	
		2 p. Pl.	
		3 p. Pl.	
	Perfect Tense.	1 p. S.	usus sim[1], *I may have used.*
		2 p. S.	usus sis, *Thou mayst have used.*
		3 p. S.	usus sit, *He may have used.*
		1 p. Pl.	usi simus, *We may have used.*
		[illegible] Pl.	[illegible]

Historic Tenses.	IMPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	ut-ĕrer, *I should* or *might use.*
		2 p. S.	ut-ĕrēris *or* -ĕrēre, *Thou wouldst use.*
		3 p. S.	ut-erētur, *He, she, it would use.*
		1 p. Pl.	ut-erēmur, *We should use.*
		2 p. Pl.	ut-erēmini, *Ye* or *you would use.*
		3 p. Pl.	ut-erentur, *They would use.*
	SIMPLE-PAST TENSE.	1 p. S.	Rendered variously by *usus sim*, *uterer*, and *usus essem*. See § 76. 58, *Note.*
		2 p. S.	
		3 p. S.	
		1 p. Pl.	
		2 p. Pl.	
		3 p. Pl.	
	PLUPERFECT TENSE.	1 p. S.	usus essem[1], *I should* or *might have used.*
		2 p. S.	usus esses, *Thou wouldst have used.*
		3 p. S.	usus esset, *He would have used.*
		1 p. Pl.	usi essemus, *We should have used.*
		2 p. Pl.	usi essetis, *Ye* or *you would have used.*
		3 p. Pl.	usi essent, *They would have used.*

[1] *or* fuissem, etc.

Conjugation of a Deponent Verb, that is, a Verb which is Passive in Form but Active in Meaning.

VERB FINITE.

Primary Tense.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.	1 p. S.	
	2 p. S.	ut-ĕre, ut-ĭtor, *use thou.*
	3 p. S.	ut-ātur, ut-ĭtor, *let him use.*
	1 p. Pl.	ut-āmur, *let us use.*
	2 p. Pl.	ut-ĭmĭni, ut-ĭmĭnor, *use ye.*
	3 p. Pl.	ut-antur, ut-untor, *let them use.*

VERB INFINITE.

Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect,	ūt-i, *using*, or *to use*.	It means literally '*the act of using.*'
Perfect and Pluperfect,	ūsus esse, *or* fuisse,	*to have used.*
Simple-Past,	(wanting).	
Future,	ūsūrus esse, *to be about to use.*	

VERB INFINITE (*continued*).

Gerunds.

Accusative,	ut-endum, *using*.	(Used after Prepositions governing the Accusative.)
Genitive,	ut-endi, *of using.*	
Dat. Abl.,	ut-endo, *for* or *by using.*	

Supines.

in -um,	ūsum, *to use.*	(Only after Verbs of motion.)
in -u,	ūsu, *in using.*	

Participles.

Present,	ut-ens, *using*	(declined like ingens).
Perfect,	ūsus, *having used.*	
Future,	ūsūrus, *being about to use.*	
Gerundive,	ut-endus, *that must be used.*	

Note on Deponent Verbs. There are Four Conjugations of Deponent Verbs, as, venor, *I hunt*, vereor, *I fear*, utor, *I use*, and partior, *I divide*, which are conjugated like amor, moneor, regor, and audior respectively, except that they have Gerunds, Supines, a Future Participle, and a Future Infinitive of Active instead of Passive form.

Note on the Deponent Gerundive. The Gerundive is the only part of Deponent Verbs which is always used Passively. But many Perfect Participles are used Passively as well as Actively, as comitatus, *accompanying* and *accompanied*, from comitor; oblitus, *forgetting* and *forgotten*, from obliviscor.

Deponents in **-ior** *of the Third Conjugation.* The Verbs gradior, *I walk*, morior, *I die*, and patior, *I suffer*, belong to the Third Conjugation, and drop the *i* before *i* and short *ĕr*, as

INDIC. PRES.	pati-or.
	pat-ĕris *for* pati-eris.
	pat-ĭtur *for* pati-itur.
	pat-ĭmur *for* pati-imur.
	pat-imini *for* pati-imini.
	pati-untŭr.
IMPER. PRES.	pat-ĕre *for* pati-ĕre.
SUBJ. IMPERF.	pat-ĕrer *for* pati-ĕrer.
INF. PRES.	pat-i *for* pati-i.

Note on the Verbs **orior** *and* **potior.** The Verbs **orior** and **potior** belong to the Fourth Conjugation of Deponents, but in some tenses they have forms borrowed from the Third, as,

INDIC. PRES.	2 p. S. orĕris *or* orīris.
	3 p. S. orĭtur.
	1 p. Pl. orĭmur.
PART. FUT.	oriturus.
INDIC. PRES.	3 p. S. potĭtur *or* potītur.
	1 p. Pl. potĭmur *or* potīmur.
SUBJ. IMPERF.	1 p. S. potĕrer *or* potīrer.
	2 p. S. potĕrēris *or* potīrēris.
	3 p. S. potĕrētur *or* potīrētur.
	1 p. Pl. potĕrēmur *or* potīrēmur.
	2 p. Pl. potĕrēmini *or* potīrēmini.
	3 p. Pl. potĕrentur *or* potīrentur.

N.B. The Notes appended to the Active and Passive forms *apply equally* to Deponents.

§ 59. Conjugation of the Anomalous Verbs.

1. Possum, [potis-sum], *to be able.*

Indicative Mood.

Present.	possum, po-tes, pot-est, pos-sŭmus, pot-estis, pos-sunt.
Fut. Simp.	pot-ĕro, -eris, -erit, -erĭmus, -erĭtis, -erunt.
Perfect.	potu-i, -isti, -it, -ĭmus, -istis, -ērunt *or* -ēre.
Fut. Perf.	potu-ĕro, -eris,- erit, -erĭmus, -erĭtis, -erint.
Imperfect.	pot-ĕram, -eras, -erat, -erāmus, -eratis, -erant.
Simp. Past.	Same in form as Perfect.
Pluperf.	potu-ĕram, -eras, -erat, -erāmus, -eratis, -erant.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.	pos-sim, -sis, -sit, -sīmus, -sitis, -sint.
Perfect.	potu-ĕrim, -eris, -erit, -erĭmus, -erĭtis, -erint.
Imperfect.	pos-sem, -ses, -set, -sēmus, -setis, -sent.
Pluperf.	potu-issem, -isses, -isset, -issēmus, -issetis, -issent.

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. and Imperf.	posse.
Perf. and Pluperf.	potu-isse.
Present Participle.	potens.

Note. 'Possum' has no Imperative Mood.

---

2. { **Volo**, *to wish, be willing.* / **Nolo** [non-volo], *to be unwilling.* / **Malo** [magis-volo], *to wish rather, prefer.*

Indicative Mood.

Present.	vŏlo, vis, vult, volŭmus, vultis, volunt. nōlo, nonvis, nonvult, nolŭmus, nonvultis, **nolunt.** mālo, mavis, mavult, malŭmus, mavultis, **malunt.**
Fut. Simp.	vŏl-, nōl-, māl- + am, -es, -et, -ēmus, -etis, -ent.

PERFECT. { vŏlŭ- / nōlu- / mālu- } i, -isti, -it, -ĭmus, -istis, -ērunt *or* -ēre.

FUT. PERF. { volu- / nolu- / malu- } ĕro, -eris, -erit, -erĭmus, -erĭtis, -erint.

IMPERFECT. { volē- / nolē- / malē- } bam, -bas, -bat, -bāmus, -batis, -bant.

SIMP. PAST. Same in form as Perfect.

PLUPERF. { volu- / nolu- / malu- } ĕram, -eras, -erat, -erāmus, -eratis, -erant.

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT. { vel- / nol- / mal- } im, -is, -it, -īmus, -itis, -int.

PERFECT. { volu- / nolu- / malu- } ĕrim, -eris, -erit, -erĭmus, -erĭtis, -erint.

IMPERFECT. { vell- / noll- / mall- } em, -es, -et, -ēmus, -etis, -ent.

PLUPERF. { volu- / nolu- / malu- } issem, -isses, -isset, -issēmus, -issetis, -issent.

Imperative Mood.

1 p. S. (wanting).
2 p. S. nolī, nolīto.
3 p. S. nolit, nolito.
1 p. Pl. nolīmus.
2 p. Pl. nolite, nolitōte.
3 p. Pl. nolint, nolunto.

Note. 'Volo' and 'malo' have no Imperative Mood.

Infinitive Mood.

PRES. AND IMPERF. { velle. / nolle. / malle. }

PERF. AND PLUPERF. { voluisse. / noluisse. / maluisse. }

GERUNDS.	volen-dum, -di, -do. nolen-dum, -di, -do. malen-dum, -di, -do.
SUPINES.	(wanting).
PRES. PARTICIPLES.	volens. nolens. malens.

---

3. **Fero,** *to bear.*

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT. fĕro, fers, fert, ferĭmus, fertis, ferunt.
FUT. SIMP. fer-am, -es, -et, -ēmus, -etis, -ent.
PERFECT. tŭl-i, -isti, -it, -ĭmus, -istis, -ērunt *or* -ēre.
FUT. PERF. tul-ĕro, -eris, -erit, -erĭmus, -erĭtis, -erint.
IMPERFECT. ferē-bam, -bas, -bat, -bāmus, -batis, -bant.
SIMP. PAST. Same in form as Perfect.
PLUPERF. tul-ĕram, -eras, -erat, -erāmus, -eratis, -erant.

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT. fer-am, -as, -at, -āmus, -atis, -ant.
PERFECT. tul-ĕrim, -eris, -erit, -erĭmus, -erĭtis, -erint.
IMPERFECT. fer-rem, -res, -ret, -rēmus, -retis, -rent.
PLUPERF. tul-issem, -isses, -isset, -issēmus, -issetis, -issent.

Imperative Mood.

2 p. S. fer, ferto.
3 p. S. ferat, ferto.
1 p. Pl. ferāmus.
2 p. Pl. ferte, fertote.
3 p. Pl. ferant, ferunto.

Infinitive Mood.

PRES. AND IMPERF.	ferre.
PERF. AND PLUPERF.	tul-isse.
FUTURE.	lāturus esse.
GERUNDS.	feren-dum, -di, -do.
SUPINES.	lātum, latu.
PRES. PARTICIPLE.	ferens.
FUT. PARTICIPLE.	laturus.

4. Feror, *to be borne.*

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT. fĕror, ferris *or* ferre, fertur, ferĭmur, ferimĭni, feruntur.
FUT. SIMP. fer-ar, -ēris *or* -ēre, -etur, -emur, -emini, -entur.
PERFECT. lat-us sum, es, est, -i sŭmus, estis, sunt.
FUT. PERF. lat-us ĕro, eris, erit, -i erĭmus, eritis, erunt.
IMPERFECT. ferē-bar, -bāris *or* -bāre, -batur, -bamur, -bamini, -bantur.
SIMP. PAST. Same in form as Perfect.
PLUPERF. lat-us ĕram, eras, erat, -i eramus, eratis, erant.

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT. fer-ar, -āris *or* -āre, -atur, -amur, -amini, -antur.
PERFECT. lat-us sim, sis, sit, -i sīmus, sitis, sint.
IMPERFECT. fer-rer, -rēris *or* -rēre, -retur, -remur, -remĭni, -rentur.
PLUPERF. lat-us essem, esses, esset, -i essēmus, essetis, essent.

Imperative Mood.

2 p. S. ferre, fertor.
3 p. S. feratur, fertor.
1 p. Pl. feramur.
2 p. Pl. ferimini, feriminor.
3 p. Pl. ferantur, feruntor.

Infinitive Mood.

PRES. AND IMPERF.	ferri.
PERF. AND PLUPERF.	lātus esse.
FUTURE.	latum iri.
PERF. PARTICIPLE.	latus.
GERUNDIVE.	ferendus.

---

5. Eo, *to go.*

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT. eo, is, it, īmus, itis, eunt.
FUT. SIMP. īb-o, -is, -it, -ĭmus, -itis, -unt.
PERFECT. īv-i, -isti, -it, -ĭmus, -istis, -ērunt *or* -ēre.
FUT. PERF. iv-ĕro, -eris, -erit, -erĭmus, -erĭtis, -erint.
IMPERFECT. *īb-am* -as, -at, -āmus, -atis, -ant.

SIMP. PAST. Same in form as Perfect.
PLUPERF. iv-ĕram, -eras, -erat, -erāmus, -eratis, -erant.

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT. e-am, -as, -at, -āmus, -atis, -ant.
PERFECT. iv-ĕrim, -eris, -erit, -erĭmus, -erĭtis, -erint.
IMPERFECT. īr-em, -es, -et, -ēmus, -etis, -ent.
PLUPERF. iv-issem, -isses, -isset, -issēmus, -issetis, -issent.

Imperative Mood.

2 p. S. ī, īto.
3 p. S. eat, īto.
1 p. Pl. eāmus.
2 p. Pl. īte, itōte.
3 p. Pl. eant, eunto.

Infinitive Mood.

PRES. AND IMPERF.	īre.
PERF. AND PLUPERF.	ivisse.
FUTURE.	itūrus esse.
GERUNDS.	eun-dum, -di, -do.
SUPINES.	ĭtum, ĭtu.
PRES. PARTICIPLE.	iens. [Gen. eunt-is.]
FUT. PARTICIPLE.	ĭturus.

---

6. **Fio**, *to become, be made.*

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT. fio, fis, fit, (fimus), (fitis), fiunt.
FUT. SIMP. fi-am, -es, -et, -ēmus, -etis, -ent.
PERFECT. fact-us sum, es, est, -i sumus, estis, sunt.
FUT. PERF. fact-us ĕro, eris, erit, -i erĭmus, eritis, erunt.
IMPERFECT. fie-bam, -bas, -bat, -bāmus, -batis, -bant.
SIMP. PAST. Same in form as Perfect.
PLUPERF. fact-us ĕram, eras, erat, -i erāmus, eratis, erant.

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT. fi-am, -as, -at, -āmus, -atis, -ant.
PERFECT. fact-us sim, sis, sit, -i sīmus, sitis, sint.
IMPERFECT. fier-em, -es, -et, -ēmus, -etis, -ent.
PLUPERF. fact-us essem, esses, esset, -i essēmus, essetis, essent.

Imperative Mood.

2 p. S. fi, fito.
3 p. S. fiat, fito.
1 p. Pl. fiamus.
2 p. Pl. fite, fitote.
3 p. Pl. fiant, fiunto.

Infinitive Mood.

PRES. AND IMPERF.	fĭĕri.
PERF. AND PLUPERF.	factus esse.
FUTURE.	factum iri.
PERF. PARTICIPLE.	factus.
GERUNDIVE.	faciendus.

Note. 'Fio' is the Passive of the Verb facio, *to make.*

---

7. The Verb ĕdo, *I eat*, has irregular forms in certain tenses.

INDIC. PRES.	ĕdo, ĕdis *or* es, ĕdit *or* est, ĕdĭmus, ĕdĭtis *or* estis, ĕdunt.
SUBJ. PRES.	edam, edas, edat, etc.; *or* edim, edis, edit, etc.
IMPERF.	ederem, ederes, ederet, etc.; *or* essem, esses, esset, etc.
INFIN. PRES. AND IMPERF.	ederе *or* esse.

---

8. Queo, *I am able*, and, nequeo, *I am unable*, are conjugated like 'eo,' but have no Imperative or Gerunds.

Note. Table of the chief tenses of the Irregular Verbs.

	Ind. Pres.	*Inf.*	*Perf.*	*Supine.*	
1.	Possum,	posse,	potui,		*to be able.*
2.	Volo,	velle,	volui,		*to be willing.*
	Nolo,	nolle,	nolui,		*to be unwilling.*
	Malo,	malle,	malui,		*to wish rather.*
3.	Fero,	ferre,	tŭli,	lātum,	*to bear.*
4.	Fĕror,	ferri,	latus sum,		*to be borne.*
5.	Eo,	īre,	īvi *or* ĭi,	ĭtum,	*to go.*
6.	Fīo,	fĭĕri,	factus sum,		*to become* or *be made.*
7.	Ĕdo,	ĕdĕre *or* esse,	ēdi,	ēsum,	*to eat.*
8.	Quĕo,	quīre,	quīvi,	quĭtum,	*to be able.*
	Nequĕo,	nequīre,	nequīvi,	nequĭtum,	to be unable.

§ 60. Specimen of an Interrogative Conjugation.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.	amo-nĕ, *Do I love?* or, *Am I loving?*
	amas-ne, *Dost thou love?* or, *Art thou loving?*
	amat-ne, *Does he love?* or, *Is he loving?*
	amamus-ne, *Do we love?* or, *Are we loving?*
	amatis-ne, *Do you love?* or, *Are you loving?*
	amant-ne, *Do they love?* or, *Are they loving?*
Future Simple.	amabo-ne, *Shall I love?*
	amabis-ne, *Wilt thou love?* etc.
Perfect.	amavi-ne, *Have I loved?*
Future-Perfect.	amavero-ne, *Shall I have loved?*
Imperfect.	amabam-ne, *Was I loving?*
Simple-Past.	amavi-ne, *Did I love?*
Pluperfect.	amaveram-ne, *Had I loved?*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.	amem-ne, *Am I to love?* or, *May I love?*
Perfect.	amaverim-ne, *May I love, if you please?*
Imperfect.	amarem-ne, *Should I love?*
Pluperfect.	amavissem-ne, *Should I have loved?*

Note on the Interrogative-Negative. **Nonne** is used for an Interrogative-Negative Sentence, and expects the answer 'yes,' as, Nonnĕ amo, *Do I not love?*

Other Interrogative Words. **Num, utrum,** and **an** are also used in asking questions. **Num** expects the answer 'no,' as, Num negare audes, *Do you venture to deny?* i. e. *You don't venture to deny, do you?* **Utrum, an,** mean

whether, *or*, and are called Disjunctives, as, Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est, *Is that your fault or ours*[1]?

NOTES ON THE CONJUGATIONS.

§ 61. **Contraction in the Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses.** Perfects ending in **-vi**, and the Tenses formed from them, may suffer contraction in all Conjugations, the letter **v** being omitted, e. g.:

Conj. 1. Amâsti *for* amavisti; amâssent *for* amavissent.

Conj. 2. Complêro *for* complevero; quiêsse *for* quievisse.

Conj. 3. Nôrunt *for* novērunt; nôsti *for* novisti.

Conj. 4. Audîsti *for* audivisti. In this Conjugation there is also a form produced by throwing out the **v**, without any contraction of vowels, as Perf. audii *for* audivi. This form is also found in certain Verbs of the Third Conjugation, as, peto, cupio, etc., which have Perfect in **-vi**, as, petii *for* petivi.

Note. This contraction is not allowed before **-re** in the 3rd Person Plural of the Perfect Indicative. We cannot write amâre *for* amavere.

§ 62. **Old Latin Forms sometimes used in Poetry.**

(1) In the Pres. Infin. Pass. **-ier** was used for **-i**, as, amarier *for* amari.

(2) In the Imperf. Indic. of 4th Conjugation **e** was dropped, as, audibam *for* audiebam.

(3) In the Fut. Simp. of 4th Conjugation **-ibo** and **-ibor** were used for **-iam** and **-iar**, as, audibo *for* audiam, audibor *for* audiar.

(4) The Subj. Pres. in the 1st and 3rd Conjugations

[1] Literally, '*Whether is that your fault or ours?*' but the English interrogative *whether* is now seldom used in direct sentences.

sometimes ended in **-im**, as, duim, *let me give*, for dem; edim, *let me eat*, for edam.

§ 63. **Note on certain Imperatives.** Dico, duco, facio, and fero[1], make in the Imperative Present dic, duc, fac, fer. Scio, *I know*, has only scito, never sci, for Imperative.

§ 64. **Note on the termination '-re' for '-ris.'** The use of **-re** for **-ris** as the termination of the 2nd Pers. Sing. in the Passive Voice is common in all the tenses except the Present Indicative, where it might be mistaken for the Infinitive Active or Imperative Passive, as, amare.

§ 65. **Gerundive in '-undus.'** The gerundives of the 3rd and 4th Conjugations are sometimes formed in **-undus** instead of **-endus**, especially when **i** precedes, as potiundus, capiundus.

§ 66. **Note on the Periphrastic Conjugations.** The Future Active Participle may be coupled with all the Tenses of the Verb **sum**, and thus a new Conjugation, called the Periphrastic, is formed, indicating that a person *has a mind to do a thing* or *is upon the point of doing it*, e. g.

amatur-us, -a, -um sum, *I am about to love.*
amatur-us, -a, -um eram, *I was about to love.*

And so on throughout all the tenses.

In the same way the Gerundive may be coupled with the Tenses of 'sum,' as,

amandus sum, *I ought to be loved* or *I must be loved.*
amandus eram, *I ought to have been loved*, etc.

DEFECTIVE AND OTHER VERBS.

§ 67. Defective Verbs are those of which only certain Moods, Tenses, or Persons are found. The most remarkable are,—

[1] *Say, lead, make, bear.*

(*a*) **Aio**, *I say* or *affirm*.

Indic. Pres.	Aīo,	ăĭs,	ăit,			aĭunt.
„ Imperf.	Aī-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat,	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ebant.
Subj. Pres.		aĭas,	aĭat,			aiant.

(*b*) **Inquam**, *I say*.

Indic. Pres.	Inquam,	inquĭs,	inquĭt,	inquĭmus,	inquĭtis,	inquĭunt.
„ Imperf.	Inquĭ-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat,	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
„ Fut.		inquĭes,	inquĭet.			
Imperat. Pres.		inquĕ,			inquĭte.	

(*c*) **Coepi**, *I have begun*, **novi**, *I know*, **memini**, *I remember*, and **odi**, *I hate*, have, for the most part, only those parts of the Verb which are formed from the Perfect Tense, e. g.:

Indic. Perf.	coepi, coepisti, coepit, etc.
„ Pluperf.	coeperam.
„ Fut. Perf.	coepero.
Subj. Perf.	coeperim.
„ Pluperf.	coepissem.
Inf. Perf. and Pluperf.	coepisse.

Note. **Coepi** and **odi** have also a Perf. Part. coeptus, osus, and a Fut. Part. coeptūrus, ōsūrus. **Memini**, has an Imperative mĕmento, Plur. mĕmentōte.

(*d*) **Fari**, *to speak*, has fātur, *he speaks*, fābor, *I shall speak*, and fārĕ, *speak thou*, with Participles fātus, fandus, and Gerunds fandi, fando.

(*e*) The following Imperatives:

Ăvē (or hăvē), ăvēte, *hail*. Infin. ăvēre.
Salvē, salvētĕ, *hail*. Infin. salvēre.
Cĕdŏ, cĕdĭtĕ (or cettĕ), *give me*.
Apăgĕ, ăpăgĭtĕ, *begone*.

§ 68. **Derived Verbs.** Many Verbs are derived either from other Verbs or from Nouns. Those chiefly derived from Verbs are of four kinds, Inceptive, Desiderative, Frequentative, and Diminutive.

Inceptive Verbs signify 'to begin to do a thing,' and end in **-sco**, as, **calesco**, *I grow warm* (from caleo), **tenerasco**, *I grow tender* (from tener).

Desiderative Verbs signify 'to desire to do a thing,' and end in **-urio**, as, **esŭrio**, *I wish to eat*, or *I am hungry* (from edo).

Frequentative Verbs signify 'to do a thing frequently,' and end in **-so**, **-to**, and **-ito**, as, **pulso** (from pello, *I drive*), **canto** (from cano, *I sing*), and **clamĭto** (from clamo, *I shout*).

Diminutive Verbs signify 'to do a little thing,' and end in **-illo**, as, **cantillo**, *I sing a little song* (from cano).

Verbs derived from Nouns belong usually to the First Conjugation if Transitive, and to the Second if Intransitive, as, fraudāre, *to deceive* [from 'fraus'], albēre, *to be white* [from 'albus'].

§ 69. **Neuter Passive** (or **Semi-Deponent**) **Verbs.** These are **audeo**, **fido**, **gaudeo**, and **soleo**[1]. They have an Active Present with a Perfect of Passive form, as, audeo, ausus sum; fido, fisus sum; gaudeo, gavisus sum; soleo, solitus sum.

§ 70. **Neutral Passive** (or **Quasi-Passive**) **Verbs.** These are **vāpŭlo**, **vēnĕo**, **lĭcĕo**, **exŭlo**, and **fio**[2]. They are Active in form but Passive in meaning.

§ 71. **Impersonal Verbs.** The chief Impersonal Verbs are the following. They are of the Second Conjugation, and are only found in the 3rd Person Singular of the Finite Verb, and in the Infinitive Mood.

[1] *Dare, trust, rejoice, am accustomed.*

[2] *Am beaten, am for sale, am put up to auction, am banished, am made.*

Pres.	*Perf.*	*Infin.*	
dĕcet,	dĕcŭit,	dĕcēre,	*it becomes* or *beseems.*
dēdĕcet,	dēdĕcŭit,	dēdĕcēre,	*it misbecomes.*
lĭbet,	lĭbŭit *or* lĭbĭtum est,	lĭbēre,	*it pleases.*
lĭcet,	lĭcŭit *or* lĭcĭtum est,	lĭcēre,	*it is lawful.*
lĭquet,	lĭcŭit,	lĭquēre,	*it is clear.*
mĭsĕret,	mĭsĕrŭit *or* mĭsertum est,	mĭsĕrēre,	*it moves to pity.*
ŏportet,	ŏportuit,	oportēre,	*it behoves* or *is necessary.*
pĭget,	pĭgŭit,	pigēre,	*it irks* or *troubles.*
poenĭtet,	poenĭtŭit,	poenitēre,	*it repents.*
pŭdet,	pŭdŭit,	pudēre,	*it shames.*
taedet,	taedŭit *or* pertaesum est,	taedēre,	*it wearies.*

The above Verbs are, for the most part, only found in the Impersonal form. But many completely conjugated Verbs are used impersonally, as, iuvo, *I assist*, which has iuvat, meaning *it delights*, with many others, e. g.:

Pres.	*Perf.*	*Infin.*	
accēdit,	accessit,	accedĕre,	*it is added.*
accĭdit,	accĭdit,	accidĕre,	*it happens.*
constat,	constĭtit,	constāre,	*it is well known.*
convĕnit,	convēnit,	convenīre,	*it suits.*
fit,	factum est,	fiĕri,	*it comes to pass.*

Together with certain Verbs denoting change of weather, as, pluit, *it rains*, fulminat, *it lightens*, tonat, *it thunders*, etc.

Intransitive Verbs are used impersonally in the Passive Voice, as, sto, *I stand*, statur, *it is stood* or *a stand is made.*

PARTICLES.

§ 72. **Adverbs.** These may express Place, Time, Manner, or Number, as, eo, *thither*, tunc, *then*, sapienter, *wisely*, bis, *twice.*

Adverbs are either Primitive, that is, not formed from any known word in the language, or Derivative, that is, formed from some other word, such as an Adjective, Participle, Noun, or Pronoun.

Terminations of Derivative Adverbs. Derivative Adverbs usually end in **-ē, -ō, -ter, -im,** or **-itus.**

(1) Adverbs in **-e** are usually formed from Adjectives of the First Class in *-us, -a, -um,* and *-er, -a, -um,* as, dignus, *worthy,* dignè, *worthily;* pulcher, *beautiful,* pulchrè, *beautifully.*

(2) Adverbs in **-o** are derived from Adjectives or Participles in *-us,* as, subitus, *sudden,* subito, *suddenly,* merĭtus, *deserved,* merito, *deservedly,* but the termination is comparatively rare.

Note. Sometimes the Neuter of an Adjective[1] in *-us* is used Adverbially, as, horrendum stridens, *sounding horribly.*

(3) Adverbs in **-ter** are formed from Adjectives of the Second Class, and Participles in *-ns,* by changing the *-is* of the Genitive Case into *-ĭter* or *-ter,* as, felix, Gen. felic-is, *happy,* felic-iter, *happily;* decens, Gen. decent-is, *becoming,* decent-er, *becomingly.*

Note. Sometimes the Neuter of an Adjective in *-is* supplies the place of an Adverb, as, dulcĕ, *sweetly.*

(4) Adverbs in **-im** are chiefly derived from Participles in *-us,* as, separatus, *separated,* separatim, *separately.*

(5) Adverbs in **-ĭtus** are usually derived from Nouns, as, radix, *a root,* radicitus, *by the roots.*

Adverbs are also formed from Pronouns; thus from hic, *this,* are derived the Adverbs hìc, *here,* huc, *hither,* and hinc, *from hence;* from qui, *who* or *which,* are derived quà, *where,* and quo, *whither,* etc.

For comparison of Adverbs, see § 30, p. 15.

[1] *Masculine* and Feminine Adjectives are also used Adverbially, as, invitus *(or invita)* Romam migravit, *he* (or *she*) *has unwillingly removed to Rome.*

§ 73. **Prepositions.** The following Prepositions take an Accusative Case:

ad, *to* or *at.*
adversus, } *against.*
adversum, }
ante, *before.*
apud, *at* or *near.*
cis, citra, *on this side.*
circa, circum, *around, about.*
circiter, *about.*
contra, *against.*
erga, *towards.*
extra, *outside of.*
infra, *beneath.*
inter, *between.*
intra, *within.*
iuxta, *near.*
ob, *on account of.*
penes, *in the power of.*
per, *through.*
pone, *behind.*
post, *after.*
praeter, *beside.*
prope, *near.*
propter, *on account of.*
secundum, *along.*
supra, *above.*
trans, *across.*
ultra, *beyond.*
versus, *towards* (placed after [its case).

The following take an Ablative Case:

a, ab, abs, *from* or *by.*
absque, *without.*
clam, *without the knowledge of.*
coram, *in the presence of.*
cum, *with, in company with.*
de, *from* or *concerning.*
e, ex, *out of.*
prae, *before, owing to,* or *compared with.*
pro, *for, in front of.*
sine, *without.*
tenus, *as far as.*

The following take both Accusative and Ablative; Accusative when *motion to,* Ablative when *rest at,* is implied:

in, *into* (Acc.), *in* (Abl.).
sub, *up to, under* (Acc.), *under* (Abl.).
subter, *under.*
super, *over, upon.*

§ 74. **Conjunctions.** Conjunctions are (1) Co-ordinative, as, et, *and,* sed, *but,* which do not affect the Mood of the Verb, or (2) Subordinative, as, ut, *that,* quum, *when,* which may affect it.

§ 75. **Interjections.** Interjections express joy, as, io, *hail;* grief, as, heu or eheu, *alas!* astonishment, as, en or ecce, *lo!* and calling or summoning, as, heus, ho!

§ 76.

A SHORT CATECHISM

OF

LATIN SYNTAX.

I. Elementary Rules for Construing.

1. *Q.* How do we begin the translation of a Latin sentence?
   A. First look for the Finite Verb[1], and then for its Subject. If the Verb be Transitive it will generally be followed by an Object in the Accusative Case.
2. *Q.* How do we find the Subject?
   A. The Subject is either
   (1) A Substantive[2] or Pronoun in the Nominative Case expressed in the sentence; or,
   (2) One of the Pronouns *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *we*, *you*, or *they*, not expressed in the sentence but implied in the Verb-ending.

II. Varieties of the Sentence.

3. *Q.* How many kinds of sentences are there?
   A. Three, namely:

[1] The Finite Verb of the Sentence is never found in a clause introduced by the Relative qui, quae, quod, or by a Subordinative Conjunction.

[2] Under the head of 'Substantives' are included words or phrases equivalent to Substantives, e. g. an Infinitive Mood, an Accusative and Infinitive, *an Adjective* used Substantively, or a whole clause introduced by a Conjunction.

(1) The Statement, Affirmative or Negative, as *Caesar writes; Caesar does not write.*

(2) The Question, Affirmative or Negative, as *Does Caesar write? Does not Caesar write?*

(3) The Command or Request, Affirmative or Negative, as *Write, O Caesar; Let Caesar write; Do not write, O Caesar.*

4. *Q.* In what two forms may each of these be found?

A. The Direct and the Indirect. A simple statement, question, or command, is called Direct: if dependent on another Verb it is called Indirect, as,

(*a*) 'Brutus killed Caesar.' Direct Statement.

(*b*) '*He said that* Brutus killed Caesar.' Here 'Brutus killed Caesar' is an Indirect Statement, because dependent on the words 'He said that.'

Indirect Sentences are also called Oblique or Dependent.

5. *Q.* What is a Complex Sentence?

A. A number of sentences joined together in such a manner that one is Principal and the others Subordinate.

6. *Q.* Distinguish between Principal and Subordinate Sentences?

A. The Principal Sentence contains the main Statement, Question, or Command: Subordinate Sentences are added in order to explain or modify all or part of the Principal Sentence.

III. On the Four Concords or Rules of Agreement.

7. *Q.* What are the Four Concords or Rules of Agreement?

A. (1) The Finite Verb agrees with its Nominative in Number and Person.

(2) The Adjective [or Participle] agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case.

(3) The Substantive agrees in Case with that to which it is in Apposition.

(4) The Relative **qui, quae, quod**, agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person; but in Case belongs to its own clause.

IV. On Questions and Negations.

8. *Q.* How are Questions introduced in Latin?

A. Simple Questions are introduced by **nĕ** and **num**; **ne** is used for a Simple Affirmative Question, and **num** for a Question where the answer 'No' is expected.

9. *Q.* Name the chief Interrogative Pronouns and Particles in Latin?

A. Qualis, quantus, uter, quis, quot, quotus, unde, ubi, quando,

Cur, quoties, quare, quam, quomodo, num, ne, ut, an, utrum[1].

10. *Q.* How is the word *not* expressed in Latin?

A. By **non** in Statements, **nonnĕ** in Questions, and **ne** in Commands or Requests.

V. On Copulative and Factitive Verbs.

11. *Q.* What are Copulative Verbs?

A. The Verb **sum**, and Passive Verbs of *thinking, calling*, or *making*.

12. *Q.* What are Factitive Verbs?

A. Active Verbs of *thinking, calling*, and *making*.

[1] *Of what sort, how great, which of two, who, how many, which in order of number, whence, where* or *when, when, Why, how often, wherefore, how, how, whether, whether, how, whether, whether.* See Public Schools Latin *Primer, § 149.*

VI. On Apposition.

13. *Q.* Name the three kinds of Apposition.

A. (1) The first kind is shewn in such a sentence as, Marius *consul* triumphavit, *Marius the consul triumphed;* where the second Substantive comes close after the first and gives a further description of it.

(2) The second is shewn in such sentences as, Marius erat *consul*, *Marius was consul;* Marius *consul* creatus est, *Marius was made consul;* where the second Substantive is separated from the first by a Copulative Verb.

(3) The third is shewn in such a sentence as, Marium *consulem* creaverunt, *They made Marius consul;* where both Substantives are in the Accusative after a Factitive Verb[1].

VII. Rules of Time and Place.

14. *Q.* Give the rules for expressing *Duration* of Time [or time *how-long*], and a *Point* of Time [or time *when*].

A. Duration of Time is put in the Accusative, a Point of Time in the Ablative.

15. *Q.* How is *to* a place expressed?

A. By **ad** or **in** with Accusative, unless the place be a town or small island, when the Preposition is omitted.

[1] Adjectives may also be used Appositionally after Copulative and Factitive Verbs. They must agree in Gender and Number as well as Case with the Substantive, as, Crassus erat ditissimus, *Crassus was very rich;* Gens ea Fabia vocatur, *That clan is called the Fabian;* Hannibalem fortissimum puto, *I deem Hannibal very brave.*

16. *Q.* How is *from* a place expressed?

A. By **ab** or **ex** with Ablative, unless the place be a town or small island, when the Preposition is omitted.

17. *Q.* How is *at* a place expressed?

A. By **ad, in, apud,** etc., with their cases, unless the place be a town or small island, and then—use the Simple Ablative, unless the Noun be of the First or Second Declension, Singular Number, when the Genitive must be used.

VIII. On the Accusative Case.

18. *Q.* How is the Accusative translated?

A. (1) The Accusative of the Object follows Transitive Verbs, and has no sign, as, Video taurum, *I see a bull.*

(2) The Accusative of kindred meaning follows Intransitive Verbs, and has no sign, as, Duram servit servitutem, *He serves a hard servitude.*

(3) The Accusative of Respect follows certain Verbs, Particles, and Adjectives, and is translated by the sign *with respect to* or *as to*, as, Latus humeros, *Broad as to his shoulders*, i.e. broad-shouldered.

19. *Q.* What Verbs take two Accusatives?

A. Verbs of *asking* and *teaching*[1], as, Nunquam divitias deos rogavi, *I never asked the gods for riches.*

IX. On the Genitive Case.

20. *Q.* What is the *sign* of the Genitive Case?

A. The word *of*, or *'s*; but after Verbs governing a Genitive the sign is omitted.

[1] And sometimes the Verb celo, *to conceal.*

21. *Q.* What Verbs govern a Genitive?

A. Reminiscor, obliviscor, memini, recordor, misereor, miseresco, potior, interest, and rēfert[1].

22. *Q.* Name two remarkable uses of the Genitive.

A. (1) The Genitive of Value, as, Parvi facĕre, *To make of small account.*

(2) The Elliptic Genitive, or Genitive dependent on some word understood signifying *mark, duty*, or *business*, as, Pastoris est tondēre oves, *'Tis shepherd's work to shear his sheep.*

X. On the Dative Case.

23. *Q.* What are the *signs* of the Dative Case?

A. The words *to* or *for*; but after Verbs and other words governing the Dative the signs are usually omitted.

24. *Q.* What Verbs govern the Dative?

A. (1) Nearly all Verbs compounded with

Bene, male, satis, re,
Ad, ante, con, in, inter, de,
Ob, sub, super, post, and *prae*[2].

(2) A dative put with *tell*, and *give*,
With *envy, spare, permit, believe,*
Persuade, obey, command[3]; to these
Add *pardon, succour*[3], and *displease*,
With *vacāre*, and *placēre*[3],
Servīre, nubĕre, studēre,
Heal, favour, hurt[3], *resist*, and *indulgēre*[4].

[1] *Remember, forget, remember, remember, pity, pity, get possession of, it makes a difference, it concerns.* [The first four of these Verbs also take an Accusative, and potior an Ablative.]

[2] P. S. L. P. § 106 (4) *a.*

[3] Exceptions to *succour, hurt*, and *please*, are iuvo, laedo, delecto, which take Accusative: exceptions to *command* are iubeo, rego, and guberno, which take Accusative, and tempĕro and moděror, which take both Accusative and Dative.

[4] *Dico, do, invĭdĕo, parco, permitto* or *licet, crēdo, persuadĕo*, parĕo or *obedĭo, impĕro, ignosco, succurro* or *subvenio*, displĭcĕo, have leisure, please.

25. *Q.* What other words govern a Dative?

A. Words implying *information*, *pleasantness*, *nearness*, and *superiority* [i. e. such words as in English are followed by the Preposition *to*—not implying *motion to*—expressed or understood], and the contraries of these, viz. words implying *concealment*, *unpleasantness*, *remoteness*, and *inferiority*[1].

26. *Q.* What is the Passive use of Verbs which in the Active Voice govern a Dative?

A. They are only used *impersonally* in the Passive. Thus, *I persuade* is 'persuadeo,' but *I am persuaded* is not 'persuadeor,' but 'persuadetur mihi;' literally, *it is persuaded to me.*

XI. On the Ablative Case.

27. *Q.* What are the *signs* of the Ablative Case?

A. *In*, *with*, *from*, *by*, and sometimes *at*, *than*, *of*, and *for*; but after Verbs and Adjectives governing the Ablative the signs are sometimes omitted.

28. *Q.* What Verbs govern the Ablative?

A. **Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, potior, dignor**[2], and Verbs of *wanting*, *being full*, *enriching*, or *depriving.*

29. *Q.* What Adjectives govern the Ablative?

A. **Dignus, indignus, fretus, extorris, liber**[3], and Ad-

be the slave of, be married to, devote oneself to, medĕor, favĕo, nocëo, resisto, indulge. Adapted from 'Henry's First Latin Book,' § 191.

[1] After words implying *concealment* and *remoteness* the Dative is translated in English by the word *from.*

[2] *Perform, enjoy, use, eat, get possession of, deem worthy.*

[3] *Worthy, unworthy, relying on, banished, free.* [Dignus and indignus *sometimes take a genitive.*]

jectives which signify *wanting*, *being full*, *enriching*, or *depriving*.

30. *Q.* What Substantives govern the Ablative?

A. **Opus** and **usus**[1].

31. *Q.* Mention three special uses of the Ablative Case.

A. (1) The Ablative after Comparatives, which is translated by the word *than*, as, Caesar maior erat Crasso, *Caesar was greater than Crassus.*

(2) The Ablative of the Agent, or *living person* by whom a thing is done, which requires *a* or *ab*, as, Caesar a Bruto interfectus est, *Caesar was killed by Brutus.*

(3) The Ablative of Price, which is translated by the word *for*, as, Hortum tribus talentis ēmit, *He bought a garden for three talents.*

32. *Q.* What other sorts of Ablative are there?

A. Ablatives of Cause, Respect, Description, Instrument, Place, Time, and Measure.

XII. On the Gerundive.

33. *Q.* Can the Gerunds take an Object in the Accusative Case?

A. Sometimes[2], as, Efferor studio patres vestros videndi, *I am elated with the desire of seeing your fathers.* But usually the Noun is put into the Case of the Gerund, and instead of the Gerund the Gerundive is used, agreeing in Gender, Number, and Case with the Noun.

34. *Q.* Give an example.

A. Instead of saying, Amor exercendi virtutem, *The love of*

[1] *Need, use.*

[2] Especially when a Neuter Pronoun or Adjective is the Object.

practising virtue, we should say, Amor exercend*ae* virtut*is*.

35. *Q.* How is the word *must* translated into Latin?

A. By the forms **amandum est, monendum est**, etc., which are probably the neuters of the Gerundive.

36. *Q.* Can this form take an Accusative of the Object after it, as, Amandum est Deum, *We must love God*?

A. No; we must say, Amandus est Deus. But after Verbs governing the Dative, a Dative of the Object is used, as, Parcendum est hostibus, *We must spare our enemies*.

37. *Q.* In what case is the Agent, or *living person* by whom a thing is done, put after the Gerundive?

A. In the Dative[1], as, Canendum est poetae, *The poet must sing* [literally, 'it is to be sung *by* the poet;'] unless the Verb be one of those which govern a Dative, when **a** or **ab** with Ablative must be used, as, Credendum est a poetâ, *The poet must believe*.

XIII. On the Relative 'qui, quae, quod.'

38. *Q.* What is the rule for the Mood of the Verb after **qui**?

A. Qui, in its simple sense of *who* or *which*, takes the Indicative: if there is implied in it *since*, *although*, *in order that*, or *such that*, it takes the Subjunctive[2].

XIV. On the word 'to.'

39. *Q.* How is the word *to* translated into Latin?

A. With Substantives it is the sign of the Dative, except

[1] A Dative of the Agent is also used by the poets after the Perfect Participle Passive, as, Regnata petam Laconi rura Phalantho, *I will seek the fields ruled over by Laconian Phalanthus.*

[2] *P. S. L. P.* § 150.

when it implies *motion to;* with Verbs it is the sign of the Infinitive except when it means *in order to.*

40. *Q.* How is *to* implying *motion to* expressed in Latin?

A. By **ad** or **in** with the Accusative, unless motion to a town or small island is implied, when the Accusative without a Preposition is used.

41. *Q.* How is *to* meaning *in order to* expressed in Latin?

A. Usually by **ut** with Pres. or Imperf. Subjunctive, as, Vĕnit ut videat, *He comes to see*, literally, *he comes that he may see;* Vēnĕrat ut vidēret, *He had come to see*, literally, *he had come that he might see.* But there are several other ways of expressing the sentence.

42. *Q.* Translate, in as many ways as possible, 'He sends men to kill Marcus.'

A. (1) Mittit homines ut Marcum occīdant.

(2) Mittit homines qui Marcum occīdant.

(3) Mittit homines Marcum occīsum. [Supine, which may be used after Verbs of Motion.]

(4) Mittit homines Marcum occīsūros. [Future Participle agreeing with homines.]

(5) Mittit homines ad Marcum occīdendum.

(6) Mittit homines Marci occidendi causâ. [Lit. *for the purpose of killing Marcus.*]

XV. On the word 'of.'

43. *Q.* How is the word *of* expressed in Latin?

A. By the Genitive Case; but there are several exceptions:

(1) When *of* signifies *apposition*, as, Urbs Roma, *The city of Rome.*

(2) When *of* signifies *quality* or *material*, as, Portae ferreae, *Gates of iron* [not portae ferri].

(3) When *of* means *concerning*; it must then be translated by **de** with Ablative, as, Dixit de his rebus, *He spoke of these things.*

(4) When *of* is part of the Verb, as, Curare corpus, *To take-care-of the body.*

(5) When *of* is sign of the Ablative after words signifying *want* or *deprivation*, as, Auro templum spoliare, *To rob a temple of its gold.*

XVI. On the word 'haying.'

44. *Q.* What is the Perfect Active Participle of the Verb amo?

A. There is *no* Perfect Active Participle of amo, or [with a few exceptions] of *any* Latin Verbs except Deponent Verbs.

45. *Q.* How then is 'having loved' translated?

A. By quum with Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, as, Quum amaverit, *When he has loved*, or, Quum amavisset, *When he had loved*[1].

XVII. Rules for the Verb in Dependent Sentences.

46. *Q.* In what Mood are Verbs put when dependent on Impersonals, and Verbs of *declaring* or *perceiving*?

A. The Principal Verbs are in the Infinitive Mood, the Subordinate Verbs in the Subjunctive.

47. *Q.* What is the rule for Oblique Question, and Oblique Command or Request?

A. The Verbs, whether Principal or Subordinate, are put in the Subjunctive.

[1] But if an Object follows, the Ablative Absolute construction is preferred, as, Caesar, Gallis devictis, Romam rediit, *Caesar, having conquered the Gauls* [lit. *the Gauls having been conquered*], *returned to Rome.*

XVIII. On the Sequence of Tenses.

48. *Q.* What is meant by the Sequence of Tenses?

A. The correspondence always observed between the tenses of the Principal Verbs in a sentence and those of the Subordinate Verbs.

49. *Q.* What is the rule for the Sequence of Tenses?

A. Primary Tenses are followed by Primary, Historic by Historic.

XIX. On 'ut.'

50. *Q.* What is the rule for **ut**?

A. **Ut**, meaning *as*, *when*, or *how*, takes an Indicative: **ut**, meaning *in order that*, or *so that*, takes a Subjunctive.

51. *Q.* How are *in order that . . . not*, and *so that . . . not*, translated?

A. *In order that . . . not* by nē; *so that . . . not* by **ut non**.

XX. Rules for Translating 'him,' 'her,' 'them,' 'it,' 'his,' 'their,' and 'its.'

52. *Q.* How are the words *him*, *her*, *them*, and *it* translated into Latin?

A. When they mean him*self*, her*self*, them*selves*, or it*self*, they may be rendered by **se, sui, sibi**; otherwise they must be rendered by the Pronouns **hic, ille**, or **is**.

53. *Q.* How are *his*, *her*, *their*, and *its* translated?

A. If they mean his *own*, her *own*, their *own*, or its *own*, they may be rendered by **suus**; otherwise they must be rendered by **eius, illius, eorum**, or **illorum** [1].

[1] In Complex Sentences **se** and **suus** refer to the Subject of the Principal Sentence, if it be of the Third Person. P.S.L.P. § 145.

XXI. Rule for 'quum.'

54. *Q.* What is the Rule for **quum**?

A. **Quum**, meaning *since* or *although*, always takes the Subjunctive; **quum**, meaning *when*, takes a Subjunctive if the sense requires an Imperfect or Pluperfect Tense; otherwise it takes the Indicative.

XXII. Additional Notes on Dependent Sentences.

55. *Q.* Upon what Verbs do Oblique Statements usually depend?

A. Upon Impersonal Verbs and Verbs of *declaring* and *perceiving*, *knowing*, or *thinking*.

56. *Q.* Upon what Verbs do Oblique Questions usually depend?

A. Upon any Verbs which admit an Interrogative Particle after them.

57. *Q.* Upon what Verbs do Oblique Commands usually depend?

A. Upon Verbs of *commanding* or *forbidding*, *allowing* or *preventing*, *asking*, *caring*, *endeavouring*, and *effecting*.

XXIII. Additional Note on the Sequence of Tenses.

58. A Primary Tense is followed

(1) By a Present Subjunctive, if the action takes place at the same time as that of the governing Verb, as, Nescio an verum dicat, *I know not whether he is speaking the truth.*

(2) By a Perfect Subjunctive, if the action takes place before that of the governing Verb, as, Nescio unde vēnĕrit, *I know not whence he has come*, or, *I know not whence he came.*

A Historic Tense is followed

(1) By an Imperfect Subjunctive, (*a*) if the action takes place at the same time as that of the governing Verb, (*b*) if Simple Past time is meant to be expressed, as,

(*a*) Dubitabam quid facerent, *I was doubtful what they were doing.*

(*b*) Tantâ vi hostes adortus est ut totam aciem perfringeret, *He attacked the enemy with such force that he broke through their whole line.*

(2) By a Pluperfect Subjunctive, if the action takes place before that of the governing Verb, as, Quaesivi cur ita fecisset, *I asked why he had acted thus.*

Note on the Subjunctive Simple Past. From the above it appears that the Simple Past Tense, when required to be put in the Subjunctive Mood, is rendered by the Perfect or Imperfect; by the Perfect if the governing Verb be a Primary Tense, by the Imperfect if it be Historic. But many cases occur where a Pluperfect is used in order to mark *priority of time*, as, Putavit se, si flumen transiisset, victurum esse, *He thought he should conquer if he crossed the river.* Here transiisset marks priority of time to the action denoted by victurum esse.

§ 77.

EXAMPLES OF THE FOREGOING RULES,

TOGETHER WITH

OTHER LATIN CONSTRUCTIONS.

*** Many of these sentences are given both in the Direct and also in the Oblique form, in order to familiarise learners with the construction of dependent sentences.

The examples should be not only learnt by heart, but parsed by aid of the Vocabulary and Rules for Parsing at the end of the book.

---

1. The Four Concords.

(1) *Nominative and Verb.*

The Gauls are attacking the camp.	Galli castra oppugnant.
He asks whether the Gauls are attacking the camp.	Quaerit num Galli castra oppugnent.

(2) *Adjective and Substantive.*

Many birds have a black head.	Multae aves nigrum caput habent.
It is well known that many birds have a black head.	Multas aves nigrum caput habēre constat.

(3) *Apposition of Substantives.*

Hector was son of Priam, *king of Troy.*	Hector Prĭămi, rēgis Troiāni, fīlius fuit.

It is well known that Hector was son of Priam, the king of Troy.

Hectŏrem Prĭămi, rēgis Troiāni, fīlium fuisse constat.

(4) *Relative and Antecedent.*

They have cut down the tree which grew in the garden.

Arborem, quae in horto crescebat, excīdērunt.

The tree which I loved so much has been cut down.

Arbor, quam tantopere diligebam, excisa est.

Caractacus, whose forces we subdued, has arrived at Rome.

Caractacus, cuius copias devicimus, Romam pervēnit.

We routed the Belgae, whose courage is very great.

Belgas, quorum virtus maxima est, profligavimus.

2. Apposition after Copulative and Factitive Verbs.

Camillus was created Dictator.

Camillus Dictator creātus est.

They created Camillus Dictator.

Camillum Dictatorem creârunt.

3. Duration of Time.

Priam reigned many years.

Prĭămus multos annos regnavit.

A report was spread that Priam had now reigned many years.

Pervulgātum est Priamum multos iam annos regnâsse.

4. Point of Time.

Caesar was killed on the Ides of March, in the year 44 before Christ.

Caesar Idĭbus Martiis, anno ante Christum natum quadragesĭmo quarto, interfectus est.

I have heard that Caesar was killed on the Ides of March, in the year 44 before Christ.

Audivi Caesarem Idibus Martiis, anno ante Christum natum quadragesĭmo quarto, interfectum esse.

5. 'To' a Place.

From thence having sailed to Greece I returned to Rome in twenty days.	Inde ad Graeciam advectus viginti diēbus Romam redii.
I am certain that having sailed from thence to Greece I returned to Rome in twenty days.	Pro certo habeo me ad Graeciam inde advectum viginti diebus Romam rediisse.

6. 'From' a Place.

Dionysius, when expelled from Syracuse, taught boys at Corinth.	Dionysius Syrācūsis expulsus pŭĕros Corinthi docēbat.
It is on record that Dionysius, when expelled from Syracuse, taught boys at Corinth.	Memoriae traditum est Dionysium Syracusis expulsum pueros Corinthi docuisse.

7. 'At' a Place.

(When) at Rome I love Tibur, (when) at Tibur Rome.	Romae Tibur amo, Tibure Romam.
Horatius said that when at Rome he loved Tibur, when at Tibur Rome.	Horatius dixit se Romae Tibur amare, Tibure Romam.

8. Genitive of Value.

The ignorant think little of wisdom.	Ignāri sapientiam parvi aestĭmant.
We know that the ignorant *think little of* wisdom.	Ignaros sapientiam parvi aestimāre scimus.

9. Elliptic Genitive.

It is the duty of a shepherd to shear his sheep.	Pastōris est tondēre oves.
He says that it is *not* the duty of a shepherd to shear his sheep.	Negat pastoris esse tondere oves.

10. Impersonal use of Verbs governing the Dative.

Cassandra the prophetess was never believed.	Cassandrae vati nunquam crēdĭtum est.
It is well known that Cassandra the prophetess was never believed.	Cassandrae vati nunquam creditum esse constat.

11. Accusative of Respect.

Was not Hercules broad in the shoulders?	Nonnĕ Hercules latus fuit humĕros? [Literally, *broad as to his shoulders*].
I have read that Hercules was broad in the shoulders.	Herculem latum fuisse humeros lēgi.

12. 'Ask' and 'Teach,' with double Accusative.

(1) I never asked riches of the Gods.	Nunquam divitias Deos rogāvi.
I am glad that I never asked riches of the Gods.	Gaudeo quod nunquam divitias Deos rogavi.
(2) My mother taught me my letters.	Mater mea me literas docuit.
Did my mother teach me my letters?	Maternĕ mea me literas docuit?
I remember that my mother taught me my letters.	Memini matrem meam me literas docēre.

13. Ablative after Adjectives.

He is free from blame.	Liber est culpâ.
Is he free from blame?	Liberně est culpa?
It is uncertain whether he is free from blame.	Incertum est an liber sit culpâ.

14. Ablative after 'opus' and 'usus.'

Now there is need of courage, O Aeneas; now is there demand for strength.	Nunc ănĭmis ŏpus, Aenēa; nunc viribus ūsus.
Aeneas perceived that now there was need of courage; now a demand for strength.	Nunc animis opus esse, nunc viribus usum sensit Aeneas.

15. Ablative after Comparative.

Caesar was greater than Crassus.	Caesar maior Crasso erat.
Was Caesar greater than Crassus?	Caesarně maior Crasso erat?
There are some who believe that Caesar was greater than Crassus.	Sunt qui credant Caesarem maiorem Crasso fuisse.

16. Ablative of Agent.

Vitellius was killed by his soldiers.	Vitellius a militibus suis interfectus est.
He asks whether Vitellius was killed by his soldiers.	Quaerit num Vitellius a mīlĭtĭbus suis interfectus sit.

17. Ablative of Price.

He buys a garden for three talents.	Hortum trĭbus tălentis ĕmit.
There is no doubt that he has *bought* a garden for three *talents.*	Non dubium est quin hortum tribus talentis ēmĕrit.

18. Ablative of Measure.

The richer he is the more covetous he becomes.	Quo divitior eo cupidior fit. [Lit. *by what he becomes richer, by that he becomes more covetous.*]
The more he studies the more he learns.	Quo plus literis studet, eo plus discit.
He says that the more he studies the more he learns.	Dicit se, quo plus literis studeat, eo plus discere.

19. Ablative of Cause.

The good hate sinning through love of virtue.	Odērunt peccāre boni virtūtis amōre.
The question is asked whether the good hate sinning through love of virtue.	Interrogātur oderintne peccare boni virtūtis amōre.

20. Ablative of Respect.

He trembles both in heart and knees.	Et corde et genĭbus trĕmit.
I almost think he trembled both in heart and knees.	Haud scio an et corde et genibus tremuerit.

21. Ablative of Instrument.

The wolf attacks with tooth, the bull with horn.	Dente lupus, cornu taurus petit.
It is necessary that the wolf should attack with tooth, the bull with horn.	Necesse est dente lupus, cornu taurus petat. [For ut petat; see 43, p. 120.]

22. Ablative of Manner[1].

These things are done either justly or unjustly.	Aut iure aut iniuriâ haec fiunt.
It makes no difference whether these things are done justly or unjustly.	Nil interest haecne iure an iniuriâ fiant.

23. Ablative of Quality[1].

He was a man of the greatest virtue.	Vir summâ virtūte erat.
They asked whether he was a man of the greatest virtue.	Quaesiverunt num vir summâ virtute esset.

24. Ablative of Matter[1].

From it there flow drops of black blood.	Huic atro liquuntur sanguine guttae.
I doubt whether there flow from it drops of black blood.	Dubito num huic atro liquantur sanguine guttae.

25. Gerundive used for Gerund.

Crassus prepares engines for attacking the city.	Crassus machĭnas ad urbem oppugnandam parat.
Crassus has been ordered to prepare engines for attacking the city.	Imperatum est Crasso ut machĭnas ad urbem oppugnandam paret.

26. Neuter Gerundive translated by 'must.'

We must love.	Amandum est nobis.
{I am afraid we *must* love.	Vereor ne amandum sit nobis.
{I am afraid we must *not* love.	Vereor ut amandum sit nobis.

[1] *Ablatives* of Manner, Quality, and Matter may also be classed under *the single head of* Description.

27. Gerundive with Substantive in Agreement, instead of Neuter Gerundive governing an Object.

We must love God.	Amandus est Deus [*not* amandum est Deum[1]].
There is no doubt that we must love God.	Haud dubium est quin amandus sit Deus.

28. Dative of Agent after Gerundive.

You must live in this city.	Tibi in hâc urbe vivendum est.
There is danger lest you should have to live in this city.	Periculum est ne tibi in hâc urbe vivendum sit.

29. Mood after 'qui.'

(1) *Simple sense of 'who' or 'which.'*

The Belgae are nearest to the Germani, who dwell across the Rhine.	Belgae proxĭmi sunt Germānis, qui trans Rhenum incŏlunt.
Caesar said that the Belgae were nearest to the Germani, who dwelt across the Rhine.	Caesar dixit Belgas proxĭmos esse Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incŏlĕrent.
The city which they call Rome takes its name from Romulus who founded it.	Urbs quam Romam vocant, nomen accipit a Romulo, qui eam condidit.
The bridge which he had made over the Arar was destroyed by the violence of the river.	Pons, quem in Arare fecerat, vi fluminis dirutus est.

(2) *'Qui' meaning 'since.'*

You are foolish for believing this man.	Stultus es, qui huic credas [lit. *since you believe this man*].

[1] This rule is sometimes violated by the poets, e.g.
'*Aeternas igitur* poenas in morte timendum.' Lucr.

(3) '*Qui*' *meaning* '*although.*'

He hates me, though he has never seen me.	Me, quem nunquam viderit, odit.
Though Brutus had done such things he nevertheless wished to be thought an honourable man.	Brutus, qui talia fecisset, tamen probus haberi voluit.

(4) '*Qui*' *meaning* '*in order that.*'

He will send ambassadors to beg for peace.	Legātos, qui pacem petant, mittet.
He sent ambassadors to beg for peace.	Legatos, qui pacem peterent, misit.

(5) '*Qui*' *meaning* '*such that.*'

Crassus is not the man to do this.	Crassus non is est qui hoc faciat.

30. 'To' meaning 'in order to.'

He sent men to kill Marcus.	Misit homĭnes ut Marcum occidĕrent.
	Misit homines qui Marcum occidĕrent.
	Misit homines Marcum occīsum.
	Misit homines Marcum occīsūros.
	Misit homines ad Marcum occidendum.
	Misit homines Marci occidendi causâ.

31. 'Of' denoting Apposition.

He will sail to the island of *Cyprus.*	Ad insŭlam Cyprum navigābit.

I almost think he will sail to the island of Cyprus. — Haud scio an ad insulam Cyprum navigatūrus sit.

32. 'Of' denoting Quality or Material.

The barbarians use swords of wood. — Barbări ligněis ensĭbus utuntur.

The barbarians have been persuaded not to use swords of wood. — Barbaris, ne ligneis ensibus utantur, persuasum est.

33. 'Of' meaning 'concerning.'

He will speak of these things. — De his rebus dicet.

I hope he will speak of these things. — Spero eum de his rebus dictūrum esse.

34. 'Of' forming part of the Verb.

Marcus makes-light-of the danger. — Marcus pericŭlum parvi facit.

He advised Marcus to make-light-of the danger. — Marco, ut pericŭlum parvi făcĕret, suadebat.

35. Quum with Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

(1) *With Imperfect.*

When I was at Athens I often used to hear Zeno. — Zenōnem, quum Athēnis essem, saepius audĭēbam.

It was of great importance to me when I was at Athens that I should often hear Zeno. — Meâ multum interfuit, quum Athēnis essem, ut Zenōnem saepius audīrem.

(2) *With Pluperfect.*

After having said these things, he rested. — Haec quum dixisset, requiēvit.

I was exhorting him to rest after having said these things.	Eum hortābar ut, haec quum dixisset, requiescĕret.

36. The English Perfect Participle Active.

(1) *Translation by 'quum' with Subjunctive.*

(*a*) Pompeius, having conquered Mithridates, gained an incredible amount of spoil.	Pompeius, quum Mithridātem vicisset, incredibĭli praedâ potītus est.
It is recorded that Pompeius, having conquered Mithridates, gained an incredible amount of spoil.	Memoriae trādĭtum est Pompeium, quum Mithridatem vicisset, incredibili praedâ potitum esse.
(*b*) Fabricius, having finished the war, will return to Rome.	Fabricius, quum bellum confēcĕrit, Romam redĭbit.
I know not whether Fabricius, having finished the war, will return to Rome.	Nescio an Fabricius, quum bellum confēcĕrit, Romam redĭtūrus sit.

(2) *Translation by Ablative Absolute.*

(*a*) Pompeius, having conquered Mithridates, gained an incredible amount of spoil.	Pompeius, Mithridate victo [lit. *Mithridates having been conquered*], incredibili praedâ potitus est.
(*b*) Fabricius, having finished the war, will return to Rome.	Fabricius, bello confecto [lit. *the war having been finished*], Romam redibit.

37. Adjective translated by English Adverb.

He joyfully returned to Athens.	Athēnas laetus rĕdĭit.
How joyfully he returned to *Athens is well* known.	Quam laetus Athēnas redĭĕrit bĕne nōtum est.

38. Neuter Adjective of Quantity used as Substantive.

How much strength still remains to you!	Quantum robŏris adhuc tibi supĕrest!
It is incredibile how much strength still remains to you.	Incredibile est quantum robŏris adhuc tibi supersit.

39. Construction of 'medius,' 'summus,' 'primus,' etc.

(1) He was standing on the top of a tower.	In summâ turre stābat.
They said he was not standing on the top of a tower.	Eum in summâ turre stāre negârunt.
(2) The captives will be led through the midst of the city.	Captīvi per mĕdĭam urbem dūcentur.
It is announced that the captives will be led through the midst of the city.	Captīvos per mĕdĭam urbem ductum iri nuntiātur.
(3) Osiris was the first to make ploughs [or 'the first *who* made'].	Osīris primus ărātra fēcit.
It is uncertain whether Osiris or Triptolemus was the first to make ploughs.	Incertum est Osirisne an Triptŏlĕmus primus ărātra fēcĕrit.

40. 'May' and 'might' translated by 'licet,' 'it is allowed.'

Not even a king may kill men uncondemned.	Indemnātos occīdere ne rēgi quidem licet.
He asserted that not even a king might kill men uncondemned.	Indemnātos occīdere ne regi quidem licēre affirmāvit.

41. 'Can' and 'could' translated by 'possum,' 'I am able.'

I can relate to you many precepts of the ancients.	Possum multa tibi vetĕrum praecepta rĕferre.
I could have related to you many precepts of the ancients.	Multa tibi vetĕrum praecepta rĕferre potui.

42. 'Ought' translated by 'oportet,' 'it behoves.'

I ought to set out.	Me prŏfĭcisci ŏportet.
I ought to have set out.	Me prŏfĭcisci ŏportuit.

43. Omission of 'ut' and 'ne' after certain Verbs.

(1) It is necessary that you should do this.	Necesse est hoc făcĭas [*for* ut hoc facias].
(2) Take care you do not waste your time.	Cave tempus absūmas [*for* ne absumas].

44. Omission of 'sum' with the Compound Tenses of Verbs.

Caesar promises to come.	Caesar se ventūrum pollicētur [*for* venturum esse].
I know not why Caesar promises to come.	Nescĭo cur Caesar se ventūrum pollicĕātur[1].

45. Personal use of Copulative Verbs.

It is said that Claudius was mad.	Claudius insānus fŭisse dĭcĭtur [*not* Claudium insānum fŭisse dĭcĭtur].

[1] This omission of the auxiliary is very frequent in all authors, and constantly causes trouble and difficulty to beginners. Until considerable progress has been made in Latin the auxiliary should in all cases be supplied, and its omission be considered an irregularity.

I am surprised at its being said that Claudius was mad.

Mīror quod Claudius insānus fŭisse dīcĭtur.

46. The word 'which' used as Nominative and as Accusative.

The army which Hannibal brought with him was small.

Exercĭtus, quem Hannĭbal sēcum duxit, parvus erat.

It is said that Scipio commanded the army which overcame Hannibal.

Exercitŭi, qui Hannĭbălem superāvit, Scipio praefuisse dīcĭtur.

I am expecting the letter which you have written.

Literas exspecto, quas scripsisti.

The hour which has passed can never return.

Non, quae praeteriit, hora redire potest.

47. 'Quod,' 'because,' with Subjunctive, when implying an asserted, or imagined, not an actual reason.

They condemned Marcus to death on the charge of killing his father.

Marcum capĭtis damnârunt quod patrem occīdisset, [i. e. 'because *they said* he had killed his father.' 'Because he *had* killed his father' would be Indicative, 'quod patrem occiderat.']

It is said that they condemned Marcus to death on the charge of killing his father.

Dicuntur Marcum capitis damnâsse quod patrem occīdisset.

48. Use of 'opus' with the Perfect Participle Passive.

Before you begin there is need of deliberation, and, after deliberation, of prompt despatch.

Priusquam incĭpĭas consulto, et ubi consŭlŭĕris, matūrè facto opus est.

I do not wonder that before you begin there is need of deliberation and, after deliberation, of prompt despatch.	Non miror si, priusquam incĭpĭas consulto, et, ubi consŭlŭĕris, matūrè facto opus est.

49. 'Would,' the sign of the Future Tense in Dependent Sentences.

I. Active Voice.

(1) He would love.	Amāret.
He said that he would love.	Dixit se amātūrum esse [1].
It was uncertain whether he would love.	Incertum erat num amaturus esset.
(2) He would have loved.	Amāvisset.
He said that he would have loved.	Dixit se amaturum fuisse [2].
It is uncertain whether he would have loved.	Incertum est num amaturus fuisset.

II. Passive Voice.

(1) He would be loved.	Amārētur.
He said that he would be loved.	Dixit se amātum iri [3].
It was uncertain whether he would be loved.	Incertum erat num amārētur [4].

[1] But with Verbs that have no Supine and consequently no Future Infinitive [which is formed from the Supine] the phrase, 'fore ut' *or* 'futurum esse ut,' with Imperf. Subjunctive is used, as, 'I hoped the boys would learn,' 'Speravi fore [*or* futurum esse] ut pueri discerent.'

[2] With Verbs having no Supine, 'futurum fuisse ut,' with Imperfect Subjunctive would be used.

[3] With Verbs having no Supine, 'fore ut' *or* 'futurum esse ut,' with Imperfect Subjunctive, would be used.

[4] The Passive has no special form for the Future Subjunctive. 'Incertum erat num amaretur' therefore may mean, 'It was uncertain whether he *would be loved*,' *or*, 'It was uncertain whether he *was* loved.' Such a form as '*futurum esset ut* amaretur' is not found.

(2) He would have been loved.	Amatus esset.
He said that he would have been loved.	Dixit futūrum fŭisse ut amāretur.
It is uncertain whether he would have been loved.	Incertum est an amātus esset.

50. Ways of translating 'without[1].'

(1) He *is without* wisdom.	Săpĭentĭâ căret.
(2) Charles entered a house *without knowing* to whom it belonged.	Carŏlus domum, ignārus cuius esset, ingressus est.
(3) The town was taken *without* a single man being killed.	Ne ūno quidem interfecto, urbs capta est.
(4) He departed *without* saying a word.	Discessit, et ne verbum quidem edidit.
(5) He departed *without accomplishing* his purpose.	Re infectâ discessit.
(6) You cannot learn *without studying*.	Discĕre non pŏtes nĭsĭ literis stŭdĕas.
(7) You cannot study *without learning*.	Literis studēre non pŏtes quin discas.
(8) He did this *without* his father's knowledge.	Hoc clam patre fecit.

51. Ways of translating 'instead of[2].'

(1) He sent me *instead of* another.	Me altĕrĭus vice misit.
(2) Hannibal, *instead of* retiring to Capua, ought to have attacked Rome.	Hannĭbal non Capŭam recēdere sed Romam oppugnare dēbŭit.

[1] Introduction to Dr. Melvin's Latin Exercises. [2] Ibid.

(3) Hannibal retired to Capua *instead of* attacking Rome.	Hannĭbal Capŭam rĕcessit quum Romam oppugnare dēbŭisset.
(4) *Instead of* desiring the honour, he refuses it when offered him.	Tantum abest ut hŏnōrem cŭpĭat, ut oblātum reĭĭcĭat; *or*, Adeo non honōrem cupit, ut oblātum reĭĭcĭat.

52. Ways of translating 'too[1].'

(1) The way is *too* narrow.	Via nĭmis angusta est; *or*, Via angustior est.
(2) The shoe is *too* large for the foot.	Calcĕus maior est quam pro pede.
(3) Marcus was much *too* old to have the command of armies.	Marcus multo sĕnĭor fŭit quam ut [*or*, quam qui] exercĭtĭbus praeesset.
(4) Nothing was *too* arduous for him to undertake.	Nihil tam ardŭum fuit quin is suscĭpĕret.

53. Various uses of 'quin,' 'but that' ['qui non'].

(1) There is no one *but* can do this.	Nemo est quin hoc facĕre possit.
(2) Who is there *that* does *not* see?	Quis est quin vĭdĕat?
(3) Nothing is so difficult *that* it can*not* be accomplished.	Nihil tam difficĭle est quin perfĭci possit.
(4) It cannot be *that* the soul is *not* immortal.	Fĭĕri non potest quin ănĭmus immortālis sit.
(5) There is no doubt *that* the case is so.	Non dŭbĭum est quin res ita se hăbĕat.

[1] *Introduction to Dr. Melvin's Latin Exercises.*

(6) Nothing prevents our doing this. — Nihil obstat quin [*or* quōmĭnus] hoc făcĭāmus.

54. Ways of translating 'so,' 'such,' and 'as.'

(1) *As* many men, *so* many opinions. — Quot hŏmĭnes, tot sententiae.

(2) He is *such as* he has ever been. — Talis est quālis semper fuit.

(3) He is not *so* mad *as* you. — Non tam āmens est quam tu.

(4) *Such as* remained in the city he rewarded. — Ĕos, qui in urbe manebant, praemĭis affēcit.

(5) He is not *such* a man *as* to do that. — Non is est qui id făcĭat.

(6) Cato, *such* was his sagacity, found out this. — Cato, quae erat săgācĭtas, hoc deprehendit.

(7) *As* far *as* I know. — Quod sciam.

(8) He raises *as* great forces *as* possible. — Quam maxĭmas potest copĭas compărat; *or*, copias quam maximas compărat.

(9) *As* soon *as*. The *same as*. — Simul atque. Idem atque *or* idem qui.

(10) *Such* was the valour of the soldiers that they fought the whole day long. — Ea erat milĭtum virtus, ut totum diem pugnārent.

---

55. Let no one say this. — Ne quis hoc dicat.

56. He collects much corn, *in order that* food may *not* fail the army. — Multum frūmenti compărat, ne cibus exercĭtŭi dēsit.

57. He exacted much corn from the Gallic states, *in order that* food might *not* fail the army. — Multum frumenti Gallicis civitātĭbus imperāvit, ne cibus exercitui deesset.

58. *Some* said that Croesus, *others* that Cyrus would conquer.

Ălĭi Croesum, ălĭi Cyrum victūrum dicēbant.

59. *Some* fly in one direction, *some* in another.

Ălĭi ălĭam in partem (*or* ălĭas in partes) fŭgĭunt.

60. He has accurately described *not only* the earth *but also* the stars.

Non sōlum terras sed ētĭam stellas accurātè descripsit.

61. He *not only* did *not* spare foreign troops, but *not even* his own.

Non mŏdŏ ălĭēnis sed ne suis quidem mīlĭtĭbus pĕpercit.

62. Lucullus was the richest man who was then living at Rome.

Ĕōrum, qui tum Romae hăbĭtābant, Lūcullus ditissĭmus erat.

63. *It was owing to* Cato that I was not condemned to death.

Per Catōnem stetit quōmĭnus căpĭtis damnārer.

64. That victory *cost* the Carthaginians much blood.

Multo sanguĭne ea Poenis victōrĭa stetit.

65. The number of captives was a hindrance to the soldiers.

Captīvōrum nŭmĕrus mīlĭtĭbus impedimento erat [lit. 'was *for* a hindrance'].

66. The Romans were superior *as well* in forces *as* in money.

Romāni quum copiis tum argento superĭōres erant.

67. You and I are happy.

Ego et tu bĕāti sŭmus.

68. *Both* you *and* Marcus are happy.

Et tu et Marcus bĕāti estis.

69. Caesar, Pompey, *and* Crassus.

Caesar, Pompeius, Crassus; *or*, Caesar, et Pompeius, et Crassus.

70. To condemn to death.

Căpĭtis damnāre.

71. *The* more he has *the* more he wants.

Quo plūs habet, ĕō plūs cŭpit.

72. I consult you.

Consŭlo te.

73. I consult your good.	Consŭlo tĭbi.
74. I entrust you *with* the command.	Impĕrĭum tĭbi committo [*or* permitto].
75. I threaten you *with* death.	Mortem tĭbi minor.
76. I repent of my faults.	Me culpārum poenĭtet.
77. I am weary of life.	Taedet me vitae.
78. I am ashamed of my folly.	Stultĭtĭae me pudet.
79. The general refused to fight, not *that* he feared, but *because* he wished to delay.	Dux pugnam detrectāvit, non quod timēret, sed quia cunctāri vŏlŭit.
80. He *was so far from* desiring the honour, that he rejected it when offered.	Tantum abfuit ut honōrem cŭpĕret, ut oblātum reiĭcĕret; *or*, Ădĕo non honōrem cŭpīvit ut oblātum reiĭcĕret.
81. All *of* whom.	Qui omnes [Nom.]. Quos omnes [Acc.].
82. All *of* you.	Vos omnes.
83. Three hundred *of* us were engaged in battle.	Trecenti praelio interfŭĭmus.
84. When this was done.	Quo facto.
85. The Parthians and Romans contend in battle; *the latter* use swords, *the former* arrows.	Parthi cum Romanis praelio contendunt; hi gladĭis, illi sagittis ūtuntur.
86. He came sooner than any one expected.	Opinĭone omnium citius pervēnit.
87. The winter quarters were 25 miles distant.	Hiberna abĕrant millĭa passŭum viginti quinque.
88. He advances twenty miles.	Millia passuum viginti progrĕdĭtur.
89. This is of very little consequence to Caesar.	Hoc Caesăris mĭnĭmè rēfert.
90. This is of great consequence *to me.*	Hoc meâ magni rĕfert.

91. All the best citizens are accused of theft.	Optĭmus quisque cīvis furti accusātur.
92. I have been listening for a long time.	Iamdūdum ausculto.
93. To the best of one's ability.	Pro vĭrīli parte.
94. According to circumstances.	Pro re natâ.
95. He causes engines to be constructed *in order that* he may *more* easily storm the city.	Machinas exstruendas curat quo facilius urbem expugnet[1].
96. It is worth while.	Ŏpĕrae prĕtĭum est.
97. In the year 1874.	Anno millesimo octingentesimo septuagesimo quarto.

98. Various ways of translating the Latin Participle.

(1) Hostes adortus profligāvit.	He *attacked and* routed the enemy.
(2) Hic casus gladĭum edūcĕre cōnanti dextram morātur manum.	This accident impeded his right hand *as he was endeavouring* to draw his sword.
(3) Leōnĭdas sŭpĕrātus cēdĕrĕ nōlŭit.	Leonidas, *though* overpowered, would not yield.
(4) Xerxes a Graecis victus in Asiam rĕfūgit.	Xerxes, *when* conquered by the Greeks, fled back to Asia.
(5) Româ expulsus Athēnas ibit.	*If* expelled from Rome, he will go to Athens.
(6) Haec Caesăre mŏnente fēci.	I did this *because* Caesar advised me.

[1] 'Quo' is only used thus with Comparatives.

APPENDIX.

A.—A TABLE OF VERBS, SHEWING THE PRESENT, INFINITIVE, PERFECT, AND SUPINE.

*** Forms enclosed in round brackets, as, (iutum) are rarely used.

I. First Conjugation.

	Present.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
Regular Form,	-o,	-are,	-avi,	-atum.
as,	amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum.

Exceptions:—

(1) Those having -ui in Perfect, -ĭtum or -tum in Supine.

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
1.	crĕpo,	crepāre,	crepŭi,	crepĭtum,	*creak.*
2.	cŭbo,	cubāre,	cubŭi,	cubĭtum,	*lie down.*
3.	dŏmo,	domāre,	domŭi,	domĭtum,	*tame.*
4.	explĭco,	explicāre,	explicŭi, explicāvi,	explicĭtum, explicātum,	*unfold*[1].
5.	frĭco,	fricāre,	fricŭi,	frictum,	*rub.*
6.	mĭco,	micāre,	micŭi,		*glitter.*
7.	sĕco,	secāre,	secŭi,	sectum,	*cut.*
8.	sŏno,	sonāre,	sonŭi,	sonĭtum,	*sound.*
9.	tŏno,	tonāre,	tonŭi,	tonĭtum,	*thunder.*
10.	vĕto,	vetāre,	vetŭi,	vetĭtum,	*forbid.*

(2) Those having -vi in Perfect, -tum in Supine.

1.	iŭvo,	iuvāre,	iūvi,	(iūtum),	*help.*
2.	lăvo,	lavāre,	lāvi,	lautum, lōtum, lavātum,	*wash.*

[1] So nearly all compounds of plico, *to fold*, which has no Perfect or Supine.

(3) Those having reduplicated[1] Perfect, -tum in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
1. do,	dăre,	dĕdi,	dătum,	*give.*
2. sto,	stare,	stĕti,	stātum,	*stand*[2].

II. Second Conjugation.

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.
Regular Form,	-ĕo,	-ēre,	-ŭi,	-tum.
as,	monĕo,	monēre,	monŭi,	monĭtum.

Exceptions:—

(1) Those having regular Perf. in -ui, but -tum or -sum in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
1. censeo,	censēre,	censŭi,	censum,	*reckon, think.*
2. dŏceo,	docēre,	docŭi,	doctum,	*teach.*
3. misceo,	miscēre,	miscŭi,	{ mixtum, mistum, }	*mix.*
4. rĕtĭneo,	retinēre,	retinŭi,	rĕtentum,	*retain*[3].
5. torreo,	torrēre,	torrŭi,	tostum,	*parch.*

(2) Those having -vi in Perf., -tum in Supine.

1. dēleo,	delēre,	delēvi,	delētum,	*destroy.*
2. flĕo,	flēre,	flēvi,	flētum,	*weep.*
3. impleo,	implēre,	implēvi,	implētum,	*fill*[4].

(3) Those having -si in Perf., -sum or -tum in Supine.

1. ardeo,	ardēre,	arsi,	arsum,	*be on fire.*
2. augeo,	augēre,	auxi,	auctum,	*make bigger.*

[1] That is, having the first consonant of the Present, together with a vowel, prefixed to the Perfect Tense, as do, *de*-di. In the Perfects of compound Verbs the initial consonants of the Verb, not of the Preposition, appear as the reduplication of the Perfect, *e.g.* consto, con-*sti*ti.

[2] The compounds make -stĭti in Perf., as, praesto, praestiti, and seldom have a Supine.

[3] So all compounds of 'teneo,' *to hold*, which has no Supine.

[4] So all compounds of 'pleo,' *to fill*, which is never found in an uncompounded form.

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
3.	haereo,	haerēre,	haesi,	haesum,	*stick.*
4.	indulgeo,	indulgēre,	indulsi,	indultum,	*indulge.*
5.	iŭbeo,	iubēre,	iussi,	iussum,	*command.*
6.	măneo,	manēre,	mansi,	mansum,	*remain, await*
7.	mulceo,	mulcēre,	mulsi,	mulsum,	*soothe.*
8.	rīdeo,	ridēre,	risi,	risum,	*laugh.*
9.	suadeo,	suadēre,	suasi,	suasum,	*advise.*
10.	torquĕo,	torquēre,	torsi,	tortum,	*twist.*

(4) Those having **-i** in Perf., **-tum** or **-sum** in Supine.

1.	căveo,	cavēre,	cāvi,	cautum,	*beware.*
2.	făveo,	favēre,	fāvi,	fautum,	*favour.*
3.	fŏveo,	fovēre,	fōvi,	fōtum,	*cherish.*
4.	mŏveo,	movēre,	mōvi,	motum,	*move.*
5.	vŏveo,	vovēre,	vōvi,	vōtum,	*vow.*
6.	prandeo,	prandēre,	prandi,	pransum,	*dine.*
7.	respondeo,	respondēre,	respondi,	responsum,	*answer*[1].
8.	sĕdeo,	sedēre,	sēdi,	sessum,	*sit.*
9.	vĭdeo,	vidēre,	vīdi,	visum,	*see.*

(5) Those having reduplicated Perf., **-sum** in Supine.

1.	mordeo,	mordēre,	mŏmordi,	morsum,	*bite.*
2.	pendeo,	pendēre,	pĕpendi,	pensum,	*be suspended.*
3.	spondeo,	spondēre,	spŏpondi,	sponsum,	*promise.*
4.	tondeo,	tondēre,	tŏtondi,	tonsum,	*shear.*

(6) Neuter Passive (or Semi-deponent) Verbs.

1.	audeo,	audēre,	ausus sum,	*dare.*
2.	gaudeo,	gaudēre,	gavīsus sum,	*rejoice.*
3.	sŏleo,	solēre,	solĭtus sum,	*be accustomed.*

III. Third Conjugation.

No regular form. Infinitive ends in **-ĕre.** The principal varieties of Conjugation are the following:—

[1] So all compounds of spondeo, to promise.

(1) Those having **-si** in Perf., **-tum** in Supine. [*Note.* Perfects in **-xi** are considered as ending in **-si**, since **x** is only a double letter standing for **cs, gs, ks,** or **qs.**]

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
1.	allĭcĭo,	allicĕre,	allexi,	allectum,	*entice*[1].
2.	aspĭcĭo,	aspicĕre,	aspexi,	aspectum,	*behold*[2].
3.	carpo,	carpĕre,	carpsi,	carptum,	*pluck.*
4.	cingo,	cingĕre,	cinxi,	cinctum,	*surround.*
5.	cōmo,	comĕre,	compsi,	comptum,	*adorn.*
6.	cŏquo,	coquĕre,	coxi,	coctum,	*cook.*
7.	dēmo,	demĕre,	dempsi,	demptum,	*take away.*
8.	dīco,	dicĕre,	dixi,	dictum,	*say, tell.*
9.	dūco,	ducĕre,	duxi,	ductum,	*lead.*
10.	extinguo,	extinguĕre,	extinxi,	extinctum,	*extinguish*[3].
11.	fingo,	fingĕre,	finxi,	fictum,	*fashion.*
12.	gĕro,	gerĕre,	gessi,	gestum,	*carry on.*
13.	iungo,	iungĕre.	iunxi,	iunctum,	*join.*
14.	nūbo,	nubĕre,	nupsi,	nuptum,	*be married.*
15.	pingo,	pingĕre,	pinxi,	pictum,	*paint.*
16.	prōmo,	promĕre,	prompsi,	promptum,	*draw out.*
17.	rĕgo,	regĕre,	rexi,	rectum,	*rule.*
18.	rēpo,	repĕre,	repsi,	(reptum),	*creep.*
19.	scrībo,	scribĕre,	scripsi,	scriptum,	*write.*
20.	stringo,	stringĕre,	strinxi,	strictum,	*graze, squeeze.*
21.	strŭo,	struĕre,	struxi,	structum,	*build.*
22.	sūmo,	sumĕre,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	*take.*
23.	tĕgo,	tegĕre,	texi,	tectum,	*cover.*
24.	temno,	temnĕre,	tempsi,	temptum,	*despise.*
25.	tinguo,	tinguĕre,	tinxi,	tinctum,	*dye.*
26.	trăho,	trahĕre,	traxi,	tractum,	*draw.*
27.	unguo,	unguĕre,	unxi,	unctum,	*anoint.*
28.	ūro,	urĕre,	ussi,	ustum,	*burn.*

[1] So all compounds [except 'elicio'] of the unused Verb lacio, *to entice.*

[2] So all compounds of the unused Verb specio, *to see.*

[3] So all compounds of stinguo, *to quench*, which has no Perfect or Supine.

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
29.	vĕho,	vehĕre,	vexi,	vectum,	*carry.*
30.	vīvo,	vivĕre,	vixi,	victum,	*live.*

(2) Those having **-si** in Perf., **-sum** in Supine.

1.	cēdo,	cedĕre,	cessi,	cessum,	*yield.*
2.	claudo,	claudĕre,	clausi,	clausum,	*shut* [1].
3.	concŭtĭo,	concutĕre,	concussi,	concussum,	*shake* [2].
4.	dīvĭdo,	divĭdĕre,	divīsi,	divīsum,	*divide.*
5.	ēvādo,	evādĕre,	evāsi,	evāsum,	*go out.*
6.	fīgo,	figĕre,	fixi,	fixum,	*fix.*
7.	flecto,	flectĕre,	flexi,	flexum,	*bend.*
8.	flŭo,	fluĕre,	fluxi,	fluxum,	*flow.*
9.	laedo,	laedĕre,	laesi,	laesum,	*hurt.*
10.	lūdo,	ludĕre,	lūsi,	lūsum,	*play.*
11.	mergo,	mergĕre,	mersi,	mersum,	*plunge.*
12.	mitto,	mittĕre,	misi,	missum,	*send.*
13.	necto,	nectĕre,	nexi,	nexum,	*bind.*
14.	plaudo,	plaudĕre,	plausi,	plausum,	*clap the hands.*
15.	rādo,	radĕre,	rāsi,	rāsum,	*scrape.*
16.	rōdo,	rodĕre,	rōsi,	rōsum,	*gnaw.*
17.	spargo,	spargĕre,	sparsi,	sparsum,	*sprinkle.*
18.	tergo,	tergĕre,	tersi,	tersum,	*wipe.*
19.	trūdo,	trudĕre,	trūsi,	trūsum,	*thrust.*

(3) Those having a reduplicated Perf., **-tum** or **-sum** in Supine.

1.	addo,	addĕre,	addĭdi,	addĭtum,	*add* [3].
2.	cădo,	căděre,	cĕcĭdi,	cāsum,	*fall.*
3.	caedo,	caedĕre,	cĕcīdi,	caesum,	*cut, kill.*
4.	căno,	cănĕre,	cĕcĭni,	cantum,	*sing.*

[1] The compounds make -cludo, as, reclūdo, -ĕre, -si, -sum, *open.*

[2] So all compounds of quatio, *to shake*, which has no Perfect.

[3] So most compounds of do [dăre], *to give;* as, abdo, *bide;* condo, *found;* crēdo, *believe;* dēdo, *give up;* ēdo, *give forth;* perdo, *lose, destroy;* prōdo, *betray;* reddo, *restore;* trādo, *deliver up;* vendo, *sell.* But circumdo, *surround;* pessumdo, *ruin;* satisdo, *give security;* and venumdo, *offer for sale,* form Perfect, Supine, and Infinitive like 'do,' and belong to the 1st Conjugation.

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
5.	curro,	currĕre,	cŭcurri,	cursum,	*run.*
6.	disco,	discĕre,	dĭdĭci,		*learn.*
7.	fallo,	fallĕre,	fĕfelli,	falsum,	*deceive.*
8.	pango,	pangĕre,	pĕpĭgi,	pactum,	*fasten, bargain.*
9.	parco,	parcĕre,	pĕperci,	parsum, / parcĭtum,	*spare.*
10.	părĭo,	părĕre,	pĕpĕri,	partum,	*bring forth.*
11.	pello,	pellĕre,	pĕpŭli,	pulsum,	*drive.*
12.	pendo,	pendĕre,	pĕpendi,	pensum,	*weigh.*
13.	posco,	poscĕre,	pŏposci,		*demand.*
14.	pungo,	pungĕre,	pŭpŭgi,	punctum,	*prick.*
15.	rĕsisto,	resistere,	restĭti,	restĭtum,	*resist*[1].
16.	tango,	tangĕre,	tĕtĭgi,	tactum,	*touch.*
17.	tendo,	tendĕre,	tĕtendi,	tensum, / tentum,	*stretch.*
18.	tollo,	tollĕre,	sustuli,	sublatum,	*lift*[2].
19.	tundo,	tundĕre,	tŭtŭdi,	tunsum,	*beat, pound.*

(4) Those having -i in Perf., -tum in Supine.

1.	attingo,	attingĕre,	attĭgi,	attactum,	*touch*[3].
2.	ăgo[4],	agĕre,	ēgi,	actum,	*act, drive.*
3.	bĭbo,	bĭbĕre,	bĭbĭ,	bĭbĭtum,	*drink.*
4.	căpĭo[5],	căpĕre,	cēpi,	captum,	*take.*
5.	contendo,	contendĕre,	contendi,	contentum,	*strive*[6].
6.	ĕmo[7],	ĕmĕre,	ēmi,	emptum,	*buy.*
7.	făcio[8],	facĕre,	fēci,	factum,	*make, do.*

[1] So all compounds of sisto, *to stop* [itself a reduplicated form of 'sto'], which has no Perfect or Supine.

[2] Tollo has no regular Perfect or Supine. Sustuli, sublatum, are really from suffero [sub-fero].

[3] So all compounds of tango, *to touch.*

[4] The compounds make -ĭgo, -igĕre, -ēgi, -actum, as exigo.

[5] The compounds make -cĭpio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, as excipio.

[6] So all compounds of tendo, *to stretch.* Extendo, *extend*, and, ostendo, *shew*, have -sum as well as -tum in the Supine.

[7] The compounds make -ĭmo, -imĕre, -ēmi, -emptum, as interĭmo.

[8] *The compounds* make -fĭcio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, as efficio.

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
8.	frango [1],	frangĕre,	frēgi,	fractum,	*break.*
9.	fŭgio,	fugĕre,	fūgi,	fugĭtum,	*fly.*
10.	impingo,	impingĕre,	impēgi,	impactum,	*strike upon* [2].
11.	iăcĭo [3],	iăcĕre,	iēci,	iactum,	*throw.*
12.	lĕgo [4],	lĕgĕre,	lēgi,	lectum,	*choose, read.*
13.	rĕlinquo,	relinquĕre,	relīqui,	relictum,	*leave* [5].
14.	rumpo,	rumpĕre,	rūpi,	ruptum,	*burst through.*
15.	vinco,	vincĕre,	vīci.	victum,	*conquer.*

(5) Those having -i in Perf., -sum in Supine.

1.	accendo,	accendĕre,	accendi,	accensum,	*set on fire* [6].
2.	compello,	compellĕre,	compŭli,	compulsum,	*compel* [7].
3.	contundo,	contundĕre,	contŭdi,	contūsum,	*bruise* [8].
4.	defendo,	defendĕre,	defendi,	defensum,	*defend* [9].
5.	ĕdo,	ĕdĕre,	ēdi,	esum,	*eat.*
6.	findo,	findĕre,	fĭdi,	fissum,	*cleave.*
7.	fŏdĭo,	fŏdĕre,	fōdi,	fossum,	*dig.*
8.	fundo,	fundĕre,	fūdi,	fūsum,	*pour.*
9.	occĭdo,	occĭdĕre,	occĭdi,	occāsum,	*set* [10].
10.	occīdo,	occīdĕre,	occīdi,	occīsum,	*kill* [11].
11.	pando,	pandĕre,	pandi,	{ pansum, passum, }	*unfold.*
12.	percello,	percellĕre,	percŭli,	perculsum,	*strike down.*
13.	prehendo,	prehendĕre,	prĕhendi,	prehensum,	*seize.*
14.	scando [12],	scandĕre,	scandi,	scansum,	*climb.*

[1] The compounds make -fringo, -fringere, -frēgi, -fractum, as effringo.
[2] So all compounds of pango, *to fasten.*
[3] The compounds make -iicio, -iicĕre, -ieci, -iectum, as coniicio.
[4] The compounds make -lĭgo, -ligĕre, -lēgi, -lectum, as collĭgo.
[5] So all compounds of linquo, Perf. liqui, *to leave*, which has no Supine.
[6] So all compounds of the unused Verb cando, *to set on fire.*
[7] So all compounds of pello, *to drive.*
[8] So all compounds of tundo, *to beat* or *pound.*
[9] So all compounds of the unused Verb fendo, *to strike.*
[10] So all compounds of cado, *to fall;* except that the Supine is rarely found.
[11] So all compounds of caedo, *to cut.*
[12] Scando becomes scendo in compounds, as, descendo, descendi, descensum, *to descend.*

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
15.	scindo,	scindĕre,	scĭdi,	scissum,	*cut.*
16.	succurro,	succurrĕre,	succurri,	succursum,	*succour*[1].
17.	suspendo,	suspendĕre,	suspendi,	suspensum,	*suspend*[2].
18.	vello,	velle̊re,	{ velli, vulsi, }	vulsum,	*pluck.*
19.	verto,	vertĕre.	verti,	versum,	*turn.*

(6) Those having **-ŭi** in Perf., **-tum** in Supine, [one -sum].

1.	ălo,	alĕre,	alŭi,	altum,	*nourish.*
2.	cŏlo,	cŏlĕre,	cŏlŭi,	cultum,	*cultivate.*
3.	consŭlo,	consŭlĕre,	consŭlŭi,	consultum,	*consult.*
4.	ēlĭcĭo,	ēlĭcĕre,	ēlĭcŭi,	ēlĭcĭtum,	*elicit.*
5.	frĕmo,	frĕmĕre,	frĕmŭi,	frĕmĭtum,	*roar.*
6.	gĕmo,	gĕmĕre,	gĕmŭi,	gĕmĭtum,	*groan.*
7.	gigno,	gignĕre,	gĕnŭi,	gĕnĭtum,	*beget.*
8.	mĕto,	mĕtĕre,	messŭi,	messum,	*reap.*
9.	mŏlo,	mŏlĕre,	molŭi,	molĭtum,	*grind.*
10.	occŭlo,	occŭlĕre,	occŭlŭi,	occultum,	*hide.*
11.	pōno,	pōnĕre,	pŏsŭi,	pŏsĭtum,	*put, place.*
12.	răpĭo[3],	răpĕre,	răpŭi,	raptum,	*seize.*
13.	sĕro,	sĕrĕre,	sĕrŭi,	sertum,	*connect.*
14.	strĕpo,	strĕpĕre,	strĕpŭi,	strĕpĭtum,	*make a noise.*
15.	texo,	texĕre,	texŭi,	textum,	*weave.*
16.	trĕmo,	trĕmĕre,	trĕmŭi,		*tremble.*
17.	vŏmo,	vŏmĕre,	vŏmŭi,	vŏmĭtum,	*vomit.*

(7) Those having **-vi** in Perf., **-tum** in Supine.

1.	arcesso,	arcessĕre,	arcessivi,	arcessītum,	*summon.*
2.	cerno,	cernĕre,	crēvi,	crētum,	{ *separate, discern.*

[1] So all compounds of curro, *to run.* But some have the reduplicated form also, as, decurro, *to run down*, which has Perf. decurri *and* decucurri.

[2] So all compounds of pendo, *to weigh.*

[3] The compounds make -rĭpio, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, as, diripio, *to tear in pieces.*

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
3.	cognosco,	cognoscĕre,	cognovi,	cognĭtum,	*know* [1].
4.	cresco,	crescĕre,	crēvi,	crētum,	*grow.*
5.	cŭpĭo,	cŭpĕre,	cŭpīvi,	cŭpītum,	*desire.*
6.	lacesso,	lacessĕre,	lacessīvi,	lacessītum,	*provoke.*
7.	lĭno,	lĭnĕre,	lēvi,	lĭtum,	*smear.*
8.	nosco,	noscĕre,	nōvi,	nōtum,	*become acquainted with.*
9.	pasco,	pascĕre,	pāvi,	pastum,	*feed.*
10.	pĕto,	pĕtĕre,	pĕtīvi,	pĕtītum,	*seek.*
11.	quaero [2],	quaerĕre,	quaesīvi,	quaesītum,	*ask.*
12.	quĭesco,	quĭescĕre,	quĭēvi,	quĭētum,	*rest.*
13.	sĕro,	sĕrĕre,	sēvi,	sătum,	*sow.*
14.	sĭno,	sĭnĕre,	sīvi,	(sĭtum),	*allow.*
15.	sperno,	sperněre,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	*despise.*
16.	sterno,	sternĕre,	strāvi,	strātum,	*throw down.*
17.	suēsco,	suēscĕre,	suēvi,	suētum,	*be accustomed.*
18.	tĕro,	tĕrĕre,	trīvi,	trītum,	*rub.*

(8) Those ending in **-uo** in Present Indicative First Person Singular, which [with the exception of some already mentioned, as, struo, struxi, etc.] make **-ŭi** in Perf. and **-ūtum** in Supine, as, trĭbŭo, trĭbŭĕre, trĭbŭi, trĭbūtum, *assign.* In this class must be included

1.	solvo,	solvĕre,	solvi,	solūtum,	*loose, pay.*
2.	volvo,	volvĕre,	volvi,	volūtum,	*roll.*

(9) Inceptives in **-sco.** These Verbs are formed (*a*) from Verbs of the Second Conjugation, (*b*) from Nouns. The former have no Perfects, except those of the Verbs from which they are derived, as, pallesco [*from* palleo], *I grow pale*, Perf. pallŭi; the latter either have no Perfects or form them in the same way in **-ui**, as, dūresco [*from* durus], *I grow hard*, Perf. durŭi. Few Inceptives have any Supine.

(10) The Semi-Deponent, fido, *trust*, has Perfect fisus sum.

[1] So agnosco, *to recognise.* But all other compounds of nosco, *to become acquainted with*, have -nōtum in the Supine.

[2] The compounds make -quiro, -quirĕre, -quisīvi, -quisītum, as exquiro.

IV. The Fourth Conjugation.

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.
Regular Form,	**-ĭo,**	**-īre,**	**-īvi,**	**-ītum.**
as,	audĭo,	audīre,	audīvi,	audītum.

Exceptions:—

(1) Those having regular Perf., but **-tum** in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
1. ĕo,	īre,	īvi,	ĭtum,	*go.*
2. sĕpĕlĭo,	sepelīre,	sĕpĕlīvi,	sĕpultum,	*bury.*

(2) Those having **-i** in Perf., **-tum** in Supine.

1. compĕrĭo,	compĕrīre,	compĕri,	compertum,	*ascertain.*
2. rĕpĕrĭo,	rĕpĕrīre,	rēpĕri,	rĕpertum,	*find.*
3. vĕnĭo,	vĕnīre,	vēni,	ventum,	*come.*

(3) Those having **-si** in Perf., **-tum** or **-sum** in Supine.

1. fulcĭo,	fulcīre,	fulsi,	fultum,	*prop.*
2. haurĭo,	haurīre,	hausi,	haustum,	*draw up.*
3. sancĭo,	sancīre,	sanxi,	sanctum,	*decree.*
4. sentĭo,	sentīre,	sensi,	sensum,	*feel.*
5. vincĭo,	vincīre,	vinxi,	vinctum,	*bind.*

(4) Those having **-ui** in Perf., **-tum** in Supine.

1. ăpĕrĭo,	ăpĕrīre,	ăpĕrŭi,	ăpertum,	*uncover, open.*
2. ŏpĕrĭo,	ŏpĕrīre,	ŏpĕrŭi,	ŏpertum,	*cover.*
3. sălĭo[1],	sălīre,	salŭi,	saltum,	*leap.*

V. Deponent Verbs.

Deponent Verbs follow the Passive forms of the four Conjugations.

(1) Deponents of the First Conjugation are all regular, making Infin. in **-āri** and Perfect Participle in **-ātus**

[1] The compounds make -silio, -silire, -silŭi, -sultum, as, rĕsĭlĭo, *to leap back.*

(2) Deponents of the Second Conjugation make Inf. in **-ēri** and Perf. Part. in **-ĭtus**, except

Pres.	Inf.	Perf. Part.	Meaning.
1. fătĕor[1],	fatēri,	fassus,	*acknowledge.*
2. mĭsĕrĕor,	mĭsĕrēri,	mĭsĕrĭtus *or* mĭsertus,	*pity.*
3. rĕor,	rēri,	rătus,	*think.*

(3) Deponents of the Third Conjugation have no regular form. A great number end in **-scor** in Pres. Indic., e. g.:—

1. ădĭpiscor,	ădĭpisci,	ădeptus,	*obtain.*
2. commĭniscor,	commĭnisci,	commentus,	*devise.*
3. expergiscor,	expergisci,	experrectus,	*awake.*
4. īrascor,	īrasci,	īrātus,	*become angry.*
5. nanciscor,	nancisci,	nactus,	*obtain.*
6. nascor,	nasci,	nātus,	*be born.*
7. oblīviscor,	oblīvisci,	oblītus,	*forget.*
8. păciscor,	pacisci,	pactus,	*bargain.*
9. pascor,	pasci,	pastus,	*feed.*
10. prŏfĭciscor,	prŏfĭcisci,	prŏfectus,	*set out, march.*
11. vescor,	vesci,		*eat.*
12. ulciscor,	ulcisci,	ultus,	*avenge.*

The others are:—

1. amplector,	amplecti,	amplexus,	*embrace.*
2. frŭor,	frŭi,	fructus *and* frŭĭtus,	*enjoy.*
3. fungor,	fungi,	functus,	*perform.*
4. grădĭor[2],	grădi,	gressus,	*march.*
5. lābor,	lābi,	lapsus,	*glide.*
6. lŏquor,	lŏqui,	locūtus,	*speak.*
7. mŏrĭor,	mŏri,	mortŭus,	*die.*
8. nītor,	nīti,	nīsus *or* nixus,	*strive.*
9. pătĭor,	păti,	passus,	*suffer, allow.*
10. quĕror,	quĕri,	questus,	*complain.*
11. rĕvertor[3],	rĕverti,	rĕversus,	*return.*

[1] The compounds make -fĭtĕor, -fĭtēri, -fessus, as confĭtĕor, *to confess.*

[2] The compounds make -grĕdĭor, -grĕdi, -gressus, as aggrĕdior, *to attack.*

[3] Properly the Passive of 'reverto.'

Pres.	Inf.	Perf. Part.	Meaning.
12. sĕquor	sĕqui,	secūtus,	*follow.*
13. ūtor,	ūti,	usus,	*use.*

(4) Deponents of the Fourth Conjugation make Inf. in **-īri**, and Perf. Part. in **-ītus**, except,

1. assentĭor,	assentīri,	assensus,	*assent.*
2. expĕrĭor,	expĕrīri,	expertus,	*make trial of.*
3. mētĭor,	mētīri,	mensus,	*measure.*
4. oppĕrĭor,	oppĕrīri,	oppertus,	*wait for.*
5. ordĭor,	ordīri,	orsus,	*begin.*
6. ŏrĭor,	ŏrīri,	ortus,	*rise.*

B.—A TABLE OF RULES FOR THE GENDERS OF LATIN NOUNS.

I. Three General Rules.

(1) Names of *men*, *months*, *mountains*, *rivers*, *winds*, and *people*, are Masculine.

(2) Names of *women*, *countries*, *cities*, *islands*, and *plants*, are Feminine.

(3) Indeclinable Nouns are Neuter.

II. Genders of the Five Declensions.

First Declension. Feminine, except names of men and designations of men, together with Hadria, or Adria, *the Adriatic Sea.*

Second Declension. **-us** and **-er**, Masculine; **-um**, Neuter.

Exceptions:—

-us.] Alvus, colus, carbăsus,
hŭmus, vannus, pampĭnus,

domus [Fourth as well as Second [1]],
and jewels, Feminine are reckoned.
Then come pelăgus [*the sea*]
Vulgus [2], virus, Neuters three [3].

Third Declension. Gender various, according to termination of Nom. Case.

(1) Masculine terminations:—

Masculines **-er**, **-or**, and **-o** [4],
-os, and **-es** *increasing* [5], shew.

Exceptions:—

-er.] Cadāver, and all *plants* in **-er**,
With iter, uber, verber, ver,
To the Neuters we refer [6].

-or.] Four in **-or**, are Neuter, cor,
Marmor, aequor, and ador,
One is Feminine, arbor [7].

-o.] caro [carnis], *flesh*, is Feminine.

-os.] Feminine are cos and dos,
With the Neuters reckon os [8].

-es, increasing.] Feminine are compes, teges,
Merces, merges, quies, seges.
Aes [aeris], is Neuter [9].

[1] 'Domus' is declined like both the Second and Fourth Declensions, except that it avoids the endings, *-me*, *-mu*, *-mi* [in Plural], and *-mis*. Hence the memorial line,

Sperne *me*, *mu*, *mi*, *mis*, si declinare *domus* vis.

[2] 'Vulgus' is once or twice found masculine also.

[3] *Belly, distaff, canvas; ground, winnowing-fan, vine-leaf; house; common people, poison.*

[4] Except **-do**, **-go**, and **-io**, as shewn by the list of Feminine terminations.

[5] That is, having more syllables in the Oblique Cases than in the Nominative; as, magnes, magnetis, *a magnet*.

[6] *Corpse, journey, udder, whip, spring.*

[7] *Heart; marble, sea, spelt; tree.*

[8] *Whetstone, dowry; bone* [ŏs, G. ossis] or *mouth* [ōs, G. ōris].

[9] *Fetter, mat; reward, corn-sheaf, rest*, crop; brass.

(2) Feminine terminations:—

Feminines **-do**, **-io**, **-go**,
-is, **-as**, **-aus**, and **-x**, will shew,
-es, if no *increase* is needed,
-s by Consonant preceded.

Exceptions:—

-do, **-go**, **-io**.] Males are ligo, vespertilio,
Cardo, ordo, and papilio,
Pugio, scipio, and quaternio,
With other number-names, as ternio[1].

-is.] Many Latin Nouns in **-is**
Are Masculini Generis.
Amnis, axis, fascis, follis,
Callis, caulis, crinis, collis,
Fustis, ignis, orbis, ensis,
Panis, piscis, postis, mensis,
Torris, unguis, and annālis,
Glis, natālis, and canālis,
Vectis, vermis, cucŭmis,
Lapis, pulvis, and cinis,
Sanguis [sanguĭnis], vomis[2].

-as.] As, adamas, and elephas,
Are Masculina; Neuter vas[3].

-x.] Most are Male in e *plus* **x**,
Save nex, supellex, forfex, lex.
Three are Masculine in **-ix**,
Fornix, phoenix, and călix[4].

[1] *Spade, bat; binge, order, butterfly; dagger, staff, the number four; the number three.*

[2] *River, axle, bundle, pair of bellows; path, cabbage, hair, hill; club, fire, circle, sword; bread, fish, doorpost, month; torch, nail, chronicle; dormouse, birthday, canal; lever, worm, cucumber; stone, dust, cinder; blood, ploughshare.*

[3] *As, adamant, elephant; vase.* [But vas, vădis, *bail, surety*, is Masc.]

[4] *Murder, furniture, shears, law; arch, phoenix, cup.*

-es not increasing.] Two are Masculine in **-es**,
Verres and acīnaces[1].

-s preceded by a Consonant.] Masculine are fons and mons,
Rudens, torrens, dens, and pons,
Chalybs, hydrops, tridens, cliens,
Fractions of the **-as**, as triens,
Bidens [*boe*] and confluens,
Oriens, adeps, occidens[2].

(3) Neuter terminations:—

Neuters end in **-a**, **-c**, **-e**, **-ar**, **-ur**, **-us**, **-l**, **-n**, and **-t**.

Exceptions:—

-ur.] Four are Masculine in **-ur**,
Furfur, turtur, vultur, fur[3].

-us.] Feminine are some in **-us**
Increasing long, as servitus,
And [Genitive, pecŭdis] pecus.
Masculine are lepus, mus[4].

-l.] Masculines in **-l** are mugil,
Sal and consul, sol and pugil[5].

-n.] Males in **-n** are delphin, splen,
Lien, pecten, attagen[6].

Fourth Declension. **-us**, Masculine; **-u**, Neuter.

Exceptions:—

-us.] Feminine are *trees* in **-us**,
With tribus, acus, porticus,
Domus, nurus, socrus, anus,
Idus [Iduum] and manus[7].

[1] *Boar, scimitar.*

[2] *Fountain, mountain; rope, torrent, tooth, bridge; steel, dropsy, trident, client; third part, confluence; east, fat, west.*

[3] *Bran, turtle-dove, vulture, thief.*

[4] *Slavery; beast; bare, mouse.*

[5] *Mullet; salt, consul, sun, boxer.*

[6] *Dolphin, spleen; spleen, comb, woodcock.*

[7] *Tribe, needle, portico; house, daughter-in-law, mother-in-law, old woman; Ides, hand.*

Fifth Declension. Feminine, except dies, *a day*, which is Common in the Singular, Masculine in the Plural.

C.—NOTES ON THE DECLENSIONS.

I. First Declension.

(1) Several Greek Proper Names in **-as** and **-es**, all Masculine, as, Aeneas, *Aeneas*, Atrides, *son of Atreus*, and some Feminine Nouns in **-e**, as, Circe, *Circe*, crambe, *cabbage*, belong to this Declension.

N.	Aenēas,	Atrīdes,	Circe,
V.	Aeneā,	Atridē [ă *or* â, *rare*],	Circē,
Acc.	Aeneān [*or* -am],	Atridēn [*or* -am],	Circēn,
G.	Aeneae,	Atridae,	Circes [*or* -ae],
D.	Aeneae,	Atridae,	Circae,
Ab.	Aeneā.	Atridē [*or* -ā].	Circē.

Notes. The termination **-ides** or **-ades** means 'son of.' Nouns ending thus, as Atrides, are called *Patronymics*[1].

The above Greek Nouns are declined in the Plural like 'mensa,' but, with the exception of the Patronymics [which have **-um** in Gen. Pl.], are rarely found in this Number.

(2) The old Latin Genitive Singular of this Declension ended in **-as**. Hence paterfamilias, *father of a family*. Another ending, used chiefly by poets, is **-āi**, as, aulāi for aulae.

(3) **-um** for **-arum** appears as Genitive Plural (*a*) of Patronymics, (*b*) of drachma and amphora, (*c*) in poetry of certain people, as, Lapithûm, Teleboûm, (*d*) of compounds of colo and gigno, as, coelicolûm, terrigenûm.

(4) Dea, filia, equa, mula[2], make **-abus** for **-is** in Dative and Ablative Plural.

[1] Feminine Patronymics end in **-is** or **-ias**, as Thesēis, *daughter of Theseus*, Pleias, *daughter of Pleione*.

[2] *Goddess, daughter, mare, she-mule.*

II. Second Declension.

(1) Several Greek Nouns in **-os** and **-on** belong to this Declension.

N. V.	Dēlŏs,	Androgeōs,	Pelion,
Acc.	Delŏn [*or* -um],	Androgeōn [ō *or* ōna],	Pelion,
Gen.	Deli,	Androgei [*or* -ō],	Pelii,
D. Ab.	Delo.	Androgeo.	Pelio.

(2) Vir, *a man*, makes Acc. vir-um, Gen. vir-i, and so throughout. Deus, *God*, is thus declined:—

	N. V.	Acc.	Gen.	D. Abl.
Sing.	Deus,	Deum,	Dei,	Deo,
Plur.	Di [*or* dii],	Deos,	Deûm [*or* deorum],	Dis [*or* diis].

(3) **-um** for **-orum** appears as Genitive Plural (*a*) of trades, coins, weights, measures, and distributive numerals, as fabrûm, talentûm, denûm[1]; (*b*) in poetry, of names of people, as Rutulûm; (*c*) of deus, vir, and liberi[2], as deûm, virûm, liberûm, and some others, chiefly in poetry.

III. Third Declension.

(1) The stems of the Nouns of this Declension are very various, and can only be completely learnt by practice. The following are examples of the principal varieties:—

(*a*) Masculine and Feminine Nouns.

-O.	latro,	*robber*,	Gen. latrōn-is.
	Macĕdo,	*Macedonian*,	„ Macedŏn-is.
	homo,	*man*,	„ homĭn-is.
-ER.	carcer,	*prison*,	„ carcĕr-is.
	pater,	*father*,	„ patr-is.
-OR.	lăbor,	*labour*,	„ labōr-is.
	arbor,	*tree*,	„ arbŏr-is.

[1] From faber, *smith*, talentum, *talent*, deni, *ten apiece*.

[2] *God, man, children.*

-AS.	cīvĭtas,	*state,*	Gen.	civitāt-is.
-ES.	nūbēs,	*cloud,*	„	nūb-is.
	mercēs,	*pay,*	„	mercēd-is.
	mīlĕs,	*soldier,*	„	mīlĭt-is.
-IS.	lăpĭs,	*stone,*	„	lăpĭd-is.
	ăvĭs,	*bird,*	„	ăv-is.
-US.	virtūs,	*virtue,*	„	virtūt-is.
-S.	trabs,	*beam,*	„	trăb-is.
	pars,	*part,*	„	part-is.
-X.	fax,	*torch,*	„	făc-is.
	pollex,	*thumb,*	„	pollĭc-is.
	cervix,	*neck,*	„	cervīc-is.
	merx,	*merchandise,*	„	merc-is.

(*b*) Neuter Nouns.

-C.	lac,	*milk,*	Gen.	lact-is.
-E.	rētĕ,	*net,*	„	rēt-is.
-L.	mĕl,	*honey,*	„	mell-is.
	ănĭmāl,	*animal,*	„	ănĭmāl-is.
-N.	carmen,	*song,*	„	carmĭn-is.
-R.	calcar,	*spur,*	„	calcār-is.
	ebur,	*ivory,*	„	ĕbŏr-is.
-S.	ŏpŭs,	*work,*	„	ŏpĕr-is.
	littŭs,	*shore,*	„	littŏr-is.
	iūs,	*right,*	„	iūr-is[1].

(2) List of Nouns having **-im** in Accusative, and **-i** in Ablative.

Vis, ravis, pelvis, sitis, tussis,
Sināpis, cŭcŭmis, ămussis,
Praesēpis, cannăbis, secūris,
Charybdis, tigris, *atque* būris,
Et omnes fluvii in **-IS**,
Ut Albis, Tibris, Tamĕsis[2].

N.B. All Nouns which were originally Adjectives in **-is** follow tristis, and make Acc. **-em**, Abl. **-i**, as, Atheniensis [sc. 'homo'], *an*

[1] [King Edward VI, Lat. Gr. § 15.]

[2] [Ib. § 16.] *Force, hoarseness, basin, thirst, cough; mustard, cucumber, carpenter's rule; enclosure, hemp, axe; charybdis, tiger, plough-tail; Elbe, Tiber, Thames.*

Athenian; Aprīlis [sc. mensis], *April;* annālis [sc. liber], *chronicle.* September, October, November, December [sc. mensis], follow 'acer.'

Neuters in **-e, -al, -ar,** make **-i** in Abl. Sing., **-ia** in N. V. Acc. Pl.

(3) Rules for the Genitive Plural.

(*a*) Nouns *not increasing* make **-ium.**

(*b*) Nouns *increasing* make **-um.**

Exceptions to (*a*) are:

Vates, *and* proles, iuvenis, senex, canis,
Accĭpĭter, pater, mater, frater, panis[1].

Exceptions to (*b*) are:

1. Monosyllabic Nouns of which the stem ends in two Consonants, as, dens, *tooth*, dent-, Gen. Pl. dent-ium.
2. Glis, mas, mus, lis,
Nix, strix, faux, vis[2].
3. Neuters in **-al** and **-ar.**

(4) Greek Nouns of this Declension in **-as, -er, -is,** and **-os,** make Acc. **-em** *or* **-a,** as, hēros, *hero*, Acc. hērōem *or* hērōă; āēr, *air*, Acc. āĕrem *or* āĕră. The Acc. Pl. usually ends in **-ăs.**

Greek Nouns in **-is** and **-ys** make **-i** and **-y** in Voc. Poēsis, *poesy*, has Acc. poēsim *or* -in, Voc. poēsi.

Greek Nouns in **-es** have the regular Latin form, and also, in certain cases, duplicate forms derived from the Greek, e. g. Acc. **-ēn, -ĕă,** or **-ētă,** Gen. **-i, -ei,** or **-ētis.**

Orpheus is thus declined:—

Nom. Orpheus,	Acc. Orpheum *or* -ea,	D. Orpheo, -ëi, -ei,
Voc. Orpheu,	Gen. Orphei *or* -eos,	Ab. Orpheo.

(5) The Acc. Pl. of Nouns *not increasing* is often spelt **-is** instead of **-es,** as, nubis for nubes.

IV. Fourth Declension.

Nouns which take **-ubus** in Dat. Abl. Pl. are dissyllables in **-cus,** as, arcus, *bow;* also, tribus, *tribe;* partus, *birth;* veru, *spit;* artus, Pl. *limbs.*

[1] *Prophet, offspring, young man, old man, dog; hawk, father, mother, brother, bread.*

[2] *Dormouse, male, mouse, lawsuit;* snow, screech-owl, throat, force.

V. Fifth Declension.

(1) The **-e** of the Genitive **-ei** is long when preceded by a vowel, as faciēi; otherwise it is short, as rĕi. But fidĕi is doubtful.

(2) Only 'dies' and 'res' in this Declension have the Plural complete: the others either have N. V. Acc. Cases only, or no Plural at all.

VI. Adjectives.

(1) Present Participles are declined like 'ingens.' In the Ablative Absolute construction they make **-e** in Abl. Sing.; when used as epithets, **-i**.

(2) Many Adjectives belonging to the same class as 'ingens' and 'felix' have no Nom. Voc. Acc. Neuters Plural, and are scarcely ever used in the Nom. Voc. Acc. Neuter Singular. Among them are the following. They make **-e**, not **-i**, in Abl. Sing., and **-um** instead of **-ium** in Gen. Plural.

Pauper, puber, hospes, compos,
Superstes, senex, sospes, impos,
Ales, deses, and reses,
Compounds add of corpus, pes,
As bicorpor, quadrupes[1].

The following are like the above, but have **-i** in Ablative Sing.

Degener, inops, memor
Vigil, uber, immemor[2].

VII. Some Irregular Substantives.

N. V. Iupiter, *Jupiter*, has Acc. Iovem, Gen. Iovis, etc.
N. V. Bos, *ox*, Acc. bovem, Gen. bovis, etc., Gen. Pl. bŏum, Dat. Abl. bōbus or būbus.
N. V. Paterfamilias, *father of a family*, Acc. patremfamilias, Gen. patrisfamilias, etc. Here familias is an old form of the Gen., but there is also a form paterfamiliae, Acc. patrem familiae, etc.
N. V Acc. Iusiurandum, *oath*, Gen. iurisiurandi, Dat. iuriiurando, etc.
N. V. Respublica, *state*, Acc. rempublicam, Gen. reipublicae.
N. V. Acc. Iter, *journey*, Gen. itineris.
N. V. Supellex, *furniture*, Acc. supellectĭlem, Gen. supellectĭlis.
N. V. Acc. Iecur, *liver*, G. iecĭnŏris *or* iĕcŏris.

[1] *Poor, grown up, friendly, master of; surviving, old, safe, not master of; winged, inactive, inactive; double-bodied, four-footed.*
[2] *Degenerate, needy, mindful; wakeful, fruitful, unmindful.*

VIII. Some Nouns which vary their Meaning in the Plural.

S.	Aedes, *a temple.*	Impedimentum, *hindrance.*
P.	Aedes, *a house.*	Impedimenta, *baggage.*
S.	Auxilium, *help.*	Littĕra, *letter of the alphabet.*
P.	Auxilia, *auxiliary forces.*	Litterae, *epistle, literature.*
S.	Carcer, *prison.*	Ludus, *play.*
P.	Carcĕres, *starting place.*	Ludi, *public games.*
S.	Castrum, *fort.*	Lustrum, *space of five years,*
P.	Castra, *camp.*	Lustra, *dens, lairs.*
S.	Copia, *plenty.*	Opĕra, *labour.*
P.	Copiae, *forces.*	Operae, *work-people.*
S.	Finis, *end.*	Opem [Acc.], *help,*
P.	Fines, *boundaries.*	Opes, *power, wealth.*
S.	Gratia, *favour.*	Sal, *salt.*
P.	Gratiae, *thanks* or *the Graces.*	Sales, *wit.*

D.—NUMERAL ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

Numerals are of various kinds.

(1) *Cardinal*, as, unus, *one*, duo, *two*, etc. The first three Cardinals have been already declined. From quatuor, *four*, to centum, *a hundred*, they are indeclinable.

(2) *Ordinal*, as, primus, *first*, secundus, *second.*

(3) *Distributive*, as, singuli, *one apiece*, bini, *two apiece.*

(4) *Multiplicative*, as, simplex, *simple*, duplex, *twofold*, triplex, *threefold.*

(5) *Adverbial Numerals*, as, semel, *once*, bis, *twice.*

(6) There are also *Proportional Numerals*, ending in **-plus**, and meaning 'how many times as great,' as, duplus, *twice as great*, triplus, *three times as great;* and a class of Adverbs formed from the Ordinals and ending in **-o** or **-um**, as, primo or primum, *for the first time.*

The principal Numerals are given in the following Table:—

Arabic Numbers.	Roman Symbols.	Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.	Multiplicatives.	Adverbs.
1	I	ūnus	prīmus, -a, -um	singŭli, -ae, -a	simplex	sĕmĕl
2	II	dŭŏ	sĕcundus *or* alter	bīni	dŭplex	bĭs
3	III	trēs	tertius	terni *or* trīni	trĭplex	tĕr
4	IV	quātŭor	quartus	quăterni	quadrŭplex	quătĕr
5	V	quinque	quintus	quīni	quincŭplex	quinquĭĕs
6	VI	sex	sextus	sēni	sescŭplex	sexĭes
7	VII	septem	septĭmus	septēni	septemplex	septĭes
8	VIII	octo	octāvus	octōni	octŭplex	octĭes
9	IX	nŏvem	nōnus	nŏvēni	nŏvemplex	nŏvĭes
10	X	dĕcem	dĕcĭmus	dēni	dĕcemplex	dĕcĭes
11	XI	undĕcim	undĕcĭmus	undēni	undĕcimplex	undĕcĭes
12	XII	dŭŏdĕcim	dŭŏdĕcĭmus	dŭŏdēni	dŭŏdĕcimplex	dŭŏdĕcĭes
13	XIII	trĕdĕcim	tertius dĕcĭmus	terni deni		trĕdĕcĭes
14	XIV	quātŭordĕcim	quartus decimus	quăterni deni	etc., etc.	quatŭordĕcĭes
15	XV	quindĕcim	quintus decimus	quini deni		quindĕcĭes
16	XVI	sēdĕcim	sextus decimus	seni deni		sēdĕcĭes
17	XVII	septemdĕcim	septĭmus, decimus	septeni deni		septĭes decies
18	XVIII	dŭŏdēvīginti	dŭŏdēvīcēsĭmus	dŭŏdēvīcēni	Few Multi-	dŭŏdēvĭcĭes
19	XIX	undēvīginti	undēvīcēsĭmus	undēvīcēni	plicatives of	undēvĭcĭes
20	XX	vīgintī	vīcēsĭmus	vīcēni	high num-	vīcĭes
21	XXI	vīgintī ūnus *or* unus et viginti	vīcēsĭmus primus *or* unus et vicesimus	viceni singuli	bers are found in Latin, except centŭplex, *a*	sĕmĕl et vicies
22	XXII	vīgintī dŭŏ *or* duo et viginti	vicesimus sĕcundus *or* alter et vicesimus	viceni bini		bĭs et vicies

30	XXX	trīgintā	trīgēsĭmus	trīcēni	*hundred-fold*, and one or two more.	trīcĭes
40	XL	quādrāgintā	quadrāgēsĭmus	quadrāgēni		quadrāgies
50	L	quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsĭmus	quinquāgēni		quinquāgies
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsĭmus	sexāgēni		sexāgies
70	LXX	septŭāgintā	septŭāgēsĭmus	septŭāgēni		septŭāgies
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsĭmus	octōgēni		octōgies
90	XC	nonāgintā	nonāgēsĭmus	nonāgēni		nōnāgies
100	C	centum	centēsĭmus	centēni		centies
101	CI	centum ĕt ūnus	centesimus primus	centeni singuli		centĭes sĕmĕl
200	CC	dŭcenti, -ae, -a	dŭcentesimus	dŭcēni		dŭcenties
300	CCC	trĕcenti, -ae, -a	trĕcentesimus	trĕcēni		trĕcenties
400	CCCC *or* CD	quadringenti, -ae, -a	quadringentesimus	quadringēni		quadringenties
500	D *or* IↃ	quingenti, -ae, -a	quingentesimus	quingēni		quingenties
600	DC	sexcenti, -ae, -a	sexcentesimus	sexcēni		sexcenties
700	DCC	septingenti, -ae, -a	septingentesimus	septingēni		septingenties
800	DCCC	octingenti, -ae, -a	octingentesimus	octingēni		octingenties
900	DCCCC	nongenti, -ae, -a	nongentesimus	nongēni		nongenties
1,000	M *or* CIↃ	millĕ *or* millĭă	millēsimus	singŭlă millia		millĭēs
2,000	MM *or* IIM	bis mille *or* duo millia	bis millēsimus	bīna millia		bis millies
5,000	VM *or* IↃↃ	quinquĭes mille *or* quinque millia	quinquĭes millesimus	quīna millia		quinquies millies
10,000	XM *or* CCIↃↃ	dĕcĭēs mille *or* decem millia	decies millesimus	dēna millia		decies millies
1,000,000	CCCCIↃↃↃↃ	dĕcĭēs centum millia	decies centies millesimus	decies centēnă millia		decies centies millies.

E.—TABLE OF RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

I. The Simple Forms.

The Relative Pronoun, Qui, quae, quod, *who* or *which*.

The Interrogative Pronoun, { Quis, (quis), quid, / Qui, quae, quod, } *who?* or *what?*

The Indefinite Pronoun, { Quis, quă, quid, / Qui, quae, quod, } *any*.

Note. These duplicate forms of the Interrogative and Indefinite should be carefully remembered. The first is the *Substantival* Form, as, Quis hoc fecit? *Who did this?* Si quis hoc faciat, *If any one should do this*; the second is the *Adjectival*, used when some Substantive is introduced agreeing with the Pronoun, as, Qui puer hoc fecit? *What boy did this?* Si qui puer hoc faciat, *If any boy should do this*[1]. The same distinction is preserved in many of the following Compounds.

II. The Compounds.

Declensions:—

Quidam, *a certain person.*	Quidam, quaedam, quiddam, Subst. / quoddam, Adj.
Quivis, / Quilibet, — *any you please.*	Quivis, quaevis, quidvis, Subst. / quodvis, Adj.
	Quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet, Subst. / quodlibet, Adj.
Quicunque, / Quisquis, — *whosoever.*	Quicunque, quaecunque, quodcunque. (For declension of 'quisquis' see below.)
Quisque, *each.*	Quisque, quaeque, quicque *or* quidque, Subst. / quodque, Adj.
Unusquisque, *each one.*	Unusquisque, unaquaeque, unumquicque *or* -dque, Subst. / unumquodque, Adj.

[1] These distinctions are by no means rigidly observed among Latin writers, e.g. 'si *quis Deus*, en! ego, dicat,' Hor., but they should be noticed *by beginners.*

Aliquis, *some.*	Aliquis, aliquă, aliquid, Subst. Aliqui, aliquae, aliquod, Adj.
Quispiam, *any one.*	Quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam *or* quippiam, Subst. quodpiam, Adj.
Quisquam, *any one at all.*	Quisquam, quaequam, quidquam *or* quicquam.

Ecquis, ecqua, ecquid, Ecqui, ecquae *or* -ă, ecquod, } *any?* is an Interrogative-Indefinite Pronoun. The Interrogative part is translated by throwing the sentence in which the Pronoun occurs into the form of a question, and the Indefinite part by supplying the word *any*, as Ecqua puero cura est? *Has the* boy *any* care?

Quisquis, *whosoever*, is thus declined:—

N.	Quisquis,	*neut.* quidquid *or* quicquid.
Acc.	Quemquam,	*neut.* quidquid *or* quicquid.
Abl.	Quoquo, quâquâ,	quoquo.

F.—TERMINATIONS OF DERIVED NOUNS.

I. Derived Substantives are formed, **1.** from Verbs, **2.** from other Substantives, **3.** from Adjectives.

1. Substantives derived from Verbs.

(*a*) **-tor** and **-sor** express the *person who does* the action denoted by the Verb, as, amator, *a lover*, from amo; suasor, *an adviser*, from suadeo. A feminine form in **-trix** is sometimes found, as, victrix.

Note. Some Substantives in **-tor** are derived immediately from other Substantives, as viator, *a traveller*, from via.

(*b*) **-tio, -tus, -sio,** and **-sus,** express *the action of the Verb*, as, motio *and* motus, *motion*, from moveo; visus *and* visio, *sight*, from video.

(*c*) **-ium, -or,** and **-us** express the *effect* of the action denoted by the Verb as, gaudium, *joy*, from gaudeo; amor, *love*, from amo; usus, *use*, from utor.

(*d*) **-mentum** and **-men** express *means of attaining* that which the Verb denotes, as, documentum, *means of teaching*, from doceo; tutamen, *means of defence*, from tutor.

(*e*) **-ulum, -bulum, -culum,** denote *instrument*, as, iac-ulum, *instrument for throwing*, from iacio.

2. Substantives derived from other Substantives.

(*a*) **-lus, -la, -lum** [the termination varies according to the gender of the Primitive Substantive], express *diminutives*. These terminations assume various forms, e. g. **-ulus, -culus, -ellus, -illus**; as, cornic-ula, *a little crow*, from cornix; corni-culum, *a little horn*, from cornu; libellus, *a little book*, from liber; lapillus, *a little stone*, from lapis.

Note. **-leus** is sometimes a diminutive ending, as, equuleus, *a colt*, from equus.

(*b*) **-ium** denotes either *an office*, as, sacerdotium, *priesthood*, the office of the sacerdos; or an *assemblage of individuals*, as, collegium, *a college*, or assembly of collegae.

(*c*) **-ētum** denotes a *place where plants grow*, as quercetum, *a grove of oaks*, from quercus; salictum (*for* salicētum), *a willow-bed*, from salix.

(*d*) **-arium** denotes a *receptacle*, as, armarium, *a cupboard*, from arma.

(*e*) **-ile** denotes a *place where animals are kept*, as, ovīle, *a sheepfold*, from ovis.

(*f*) **-ia** denotes a country, and is usually derived from the name of its people, as, Italia, *the country of the Itali*.

(*g*) **Patronymics** end in **-ides**, as, Priamides, *son of Priamus*; or **-ades**, as, Aeneades, *son of Aeneas*. The feminines end in **-is**, as, Nereis, *daughter of Nereus*; or **-as**, as, Thestias, *daughter of Thestius*.

3. Substantives derived from Adjectives.

These all denote the *quality* which the Adjective expresses attributively. The chief terminations are:

(*a*) **-ĭtas** or **-tas**, as, bonitas, *goodness*, the quality of the bonus.

(*b*) **-ia**, as, audacia, *boldness*, the quality of the audax.

(*c*) **-itia**, as, iustitia, *justice*, the quality of the iustus.

(*d*) **-tudo**, as, fortitudo, *bravery*, the quality of the fortis.

II. Derived Adjectives are formed, **1.** from Verbs, **2.** from Substantives, **3.** from Adverbs and Prepositions.

1. Adjectives formed from Verbs.

These usually have the force of Participles. The following are the principal terminations:

(*a*) **-bundus** and **-cundus**. These = Present Active Participles, with intensive meaning, as, lacrymabundus, *weeping profusely*, from lacrymor; iracundus, *full of wrath*, from irascor.

(*b*) **-ax** denotes *active inclination*, as, pugnax, *fond of fighting*, from pugno.

(*c*) **-ĭdus**, chiefly from Intransitive Verbs, denotes *activity*, as fervidus, *glowing*, from ferveo.

(*d*) **-ĭlis** and **-bĭlis** denote *capacity*, and are generally used Passively, as, docilis, *teachable*, from doceo; mobilis (*for* movibilis), *movable*, from moveo. But some are used Actively, as, terribilis, *terrible* (i. e. *capable of terrifying*), from terreo.

(*e*) **-tivus** denotes a *state resulting from* verbal action, as, captivus, *captive* (i. e. in a state of having been taken), from capio.

(*f*) **-tĭlis** and **-sĭlis** have the force of Perfect Passive Participles, as, sectilis, *cut*, from seco; pensilis, *hung up*, from pendo.

2. Adjectives formed from Substantives.

These express, (*a*) *made of*, (*b*) *full of*, (*c*) *endowed with*, (*d*) *of* or *belonging to*. The last class is by far the most numerous.

(*a*) The chief terminations expressing *made of* are:

1. **-eus**, as, ligneus, *wooden*, from lignum.
2. **-nus**, as, quernus, *oaken*, from quercus.

Note. These terminations may, however, express *of* or *belonging to*, when the Noun from which they are derived is not a Noun of Matter, as, virgineus, maternus.

(*b*) The chief terminations expressing *full of* are:

1. **-osus**, as, nivosus, *full of snow*, from nix, nivis.
2. **-lentus**, as, vinolentus, *full of wine*, from vinum.

(*c*) Adjectives signifying *endowed with* end in **-tus**, and have the nature of Perfect Passive Participles, as, auratus, *gilded*, from aurum; auritus, *long-eared*, from auris; nasutus, *long-nosed*, from nasus.

(*d*) The terminations expressing *of* or *belonging to* are very numerous. The following are the most common:

1. **-ius**, as, regius, *royal*, from rex.
2. **-icus**, as, Gallicus, *Gallic*, from Gallus.
3. **-lis** (or **-ris**), preceded by a vowel, as, mortalis, *mortal*, from mors; popularis, *popular*, from populus; fidelis, *faithful*, from fides; hostilis, *hostile*, from hostis.

   Note. The termination **-ris** is the same as **-lis** in meaning, and seems to be used in order to avoid a repetition of the letter **l**, as, solaris *for* solalis.

4. **-nus** preceded by a vowel, as, montanus, *mountain-*, from mons; terrenus, *of earth*, from terra; caninus, *canine*, from canis.
5. **-ter** or **-tis**, as, pedester, *pedestrian*, from pes; coelestis, *heavenly*, from coelum.
6. **-as** and **-ensis** are usually confined to Adjectives derived from names of Places, as Aquinas, *of Aquinum*; Atheniensis, *Athenian*.

3. A few Adjectives are derived from Adverbs and Prepositions, as, diuturnus, *lasting*, from diu; posterus, *next*, from post.

The terminations of derived Verbs are given above, § 68.

G.—NOTE ON THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

The translation of 'amare' by the words 'loving,' [old English *loven*=to love], or 'act of loving,' as well as 'to love,' will render easy of explanation many difficulties connected with the Latin Infinitive.

It must never be forgotten that the Infinitive is a **Verb-Noun**; and therefore,

(1) That it fulfils the conditions of a Noun in admitting of Declension and government by Prepositions.

(2) That it fulfils the conditions of a Verb in taking a Subject, and, if Transitive or Trajective [1], an Object.

I. **As a Noun** the Infinitive has, by the aid of its Gerunds and Supines, a complete set of Cases, with the exception of the Vocative, e. g.:—

(1) Nominative, as, Dormire est iucundum, *Sleeping*, or *to sleep, is pleasant* [2].

(2) Accusative of the Object, as, Dormire amo, *I love to sleep.*

(3) Accusative of Respect, as, Audax omnia perpeti, *Bold to endure all things.*

Note. The construction of the Infinitive with such Verbs as amo, soleo, possum, dicor, videor, etc., and Adjectives as audax, pertinax, etc., is sometimes called *Prolate* [pro-ferre] as though it *carried on* their meaning. Whether this distinction be adopted or not there is no reason why the use of the Infinitive in all these instances should not be considered analogous to that of a Noun in the Accusative Case, fulfilling one of the commonest functions of the Accusative, viz. that of limiting the action of a Verb or the meaning of an Adjective. Whether it is to be regarded as a direct Object or merely an Accusative of Respect

[1] See N. IV.

[2] The usages here given of the Infinitive are those found in the Classical periods of Latin. But *etymologically* 'amare' appears to have been an Oblique Case, probably the Dative, of a Verbal Noun.

will depend upon the degree of Transitive force possessed by the governing Verb.

(4) Accusative after a Verb of motion, which is expressed by the Supine in **-um**, as, Dormitum eo, *I go to sleep.*

(5) Accusative after the Prepositions ad, inter, etc., which is expressed by the Gerund in **-dum**, as, Inter dormiendum, *Whilst sleeping.*

(6) Genitive, which is expressed by the Gerund in **-di**, used after Substantives and Adjectives, as, Amor ludendi, *The love of playing;* Cupidus ludendi, *Desirous of playing.*

(7) Dative, which is expressed by the Gerund in **-do**, and is usually a Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage, as, Aqua marina inutilis est bibendo, *Sea water is useless for drinking.*

(8) Ablative of Instrument, Cause, or Manner, or after a Preposition, which is expressed by the Gerund in **-do**, as, Cunctando vicimus, *We conquered by delaying,* De pugnando deliberant, *They deliberate about fighting.*

(9) Ablative of Respect, which is expressed by the Supine in **-u**, as, Mirabile dictu, *Wonderful to tell.*

The declension of the Infinitive[1] is exhibited in the following tabular form:—

NOM.	amare, *loving*, or *to love.*
ACC.	amare, *loving*, or *to love.* [Acc. of Object or Respect after Verbs and Adjectives.]
	amandum, *loving.* [Used after Prepositions.]
	amatum, *to love.* [Used after Verbs of Motion.]
GEN.	amandi, *of loving.*
DAT.	amando, *for loving.*
ABL.	amando, *from*, or *by loving.* [Ablative of Instrument, etc., or after a Preposition.]
	amatu, *in loving.* [Ablative of Respect.]

II. **As a Verb**, the Infinitive may take a Subject, which is put in the Accusative Case, and hence arises the construction known as

The Accusative and Infinitive. This is a constant source of

[1] See T. K. Arnold's 'Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition,' *Questions on* Syntax, § 44.

trouble and difficulty to beginners, principally owing to the fact that we are usually obliged, for want of an exact English equivalent, to translate it by a Substantival sentence introduced by the Conjunction *that*, and containing a Finite instead of an Infinite Verb, thus differing in every particular from the Latin form; as, Dicit Neronem canere, *He says that Nero sings* [or *is singing*[1]].

The Infinitive can also take an Object, which is put in the same case as that governed by the Finite Verb, as, Audire vocem, *To hear a voice;* Credere sacerdoti, *To believe a priest;* Fungi officio, *To discharge a duty.* The Gerunds do not usually take an Object after them. [See § 76. 33, 34.]

III. The form 'act of loving' will be found of great practical use in Latin composition as a test whenever any difficulty arises as to the employment of an Infinitive. The familiar rule that 'the Infinitive is never used to express a purpose in Latin' is *proved* by it. 'He comes to see us' *could not* be 'Venit nos *videre*,' because the literal translation of 'Venit nos videre' is '*He comes the act of seeing us*,' which is nonsense. [Those, however, who have studied English Grammar and Analysis before beginning Latin will have learnt that the apparent English Infinitive meaning 'in order to' is in reality an Adverbial phrase. For these it will be enough to state that the Latin Infinitive is never used in this Adverbial sense.] It will also suggest the propriety of the Accusative and Infinitive being used after Verbs of declaring, perceiving, etc. whilst verbs of asking, commanding, advising, striving, etc. take ut with subjunctive. The Infinitive denotes an act, and we can speak of or perceive an act. On the other hand, we can hardly be said to command, advise, or

[1] T. K. Arnold says of the Accusative and Infinitive,—'We are not quite without this idiom in English. "I ordered *him to be dismissed*" = "I ordered *that he should be dismissed.*" "I saw *him to be* a knave" = "I saw *that he was* a knave." Such a sentence as "narravit fratrem suum in praelio cecidisse," may be sometimes translated literally, "*he declared* (or *reported*) *his brother to have fallen in the battle.*"' Introduction to Latin Prose Composition, § 2. *g*.

strive, an act. We command some person, or ourselves strive, that an act may take place.

IV. There is a remarkable use of the Infinitive for the Finite Verb, found most commonly in Historic Narrative, and hence called the Historic Infinitive. It is generally used to describe a number of events happening simultaneously or in rapid succession, as, Sed nec Iugurtha quidem interea quietus erat; *circumire, hortari, renovare* praelium, et ipse cum delectis *tentare* omnia; *subvenire* suis, hostibus dubiis *instare;* quos firmos cognoverat eminus pugnando *retinere, But meantime Jugurtha too was by no means idle; he goes round and exhorts his men, renews the attack and assails every part in person with chosen troops; assisting his own men, charging the enemy when they wavered, and where he knew them to be standing firm, keeping them back by giving battle at a distance.*

The Infinitive is also used (principally by the poets) in passages expressing indignation or strong emotion, and has an interjectional force, as, Mene incepto desistere! *What! I abandon my design!* Tene torquerier! *Fancy your being tormented!* Compare the English use of the Infinitive in such phrases as, '*To think* of your doing this!' &c.

H.—NOTE ON THE LATIN PARTICIPLE.

I. The participle expresses the action of the Verb in an Adjectival form, and is always therefore found in agreement with some Substantive, expressed or understood, which it qualifies. When used only in its Adjectival sense it is a mere epithet, as, Praetervehor Thapsum iacentem, *I sail by low-lying Thapsus.*

II. But in addition to its attributive (adjectival) force, the Participle may further express notions of Time, Cause, Concession, Purpose, Condition, etc., and in all these cases it represents *a whole sentence* introduced by a Conjunction, e. g.:—

(1) *Time.* Hos ego digrediens lacrymis affabar obortis, *Them, as I departed, I addressed with rising tears.* Here digrediens = quum digrederer.

(2) *Cause.* Nihil affirmo, dubitans plerumque et mihi ipse diffidens, *I assert nothing, because I generally doubt and distrust myself.* Here dubitans et diffidens = quia dubito et diffido.

(3) *Concession.* Non statim poenis afficiuntur homines, quotidie delinquentes, *Men are not immediately visited with punishments, though they transgress daily.* Here delinquentes = quanquam delinquant.

(4) *Purpose.* Alexander ad Iovem Ammonem pergit, consulturus de origine suâ, *Alexander went to Jupiter Ammon, to consult respecting his origin.* Here consulturus = ut consuleret.

(5) *Condition.* Ad caenam vocatus ibo, *I will go to supper if I am invited.* Here vocatus = si vocatus ero.

III. A Participle may express *manner*, as, Flumen transeuntes evasērunt, *They escaped by crossing the river.* Here transeuntes = transeundo.

IV. A Participle is often best translated in English by expanding it into a Relative sentence, as, Epistolam sibi commissam detulit, *He delivered the letter which had been entrusted to him.*

V. A Participle and Verb may often be elegantly rendered in English by two Finite Verbs united by a Conjunction, as, Castris positis, hostem expectavit, *He pitched his camp and awaited the enemy;* Milites convocatos ita allocutus est, *He summoned his soldiers and thus addressed them.*

VI. Participles may often be rendered by Substantives of kindred meaning, as, Ver rediens, *The return of spring;* Epistolâ statim acceptâ profectus sum, *I set out immediately on receipt of the letter.*

I.—NOTE ON THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

I. The Latin Ablative Absolute is exactly equivalent to the construction in English called the Nominative Absolute, where a Noun and a Participle in Agreement with one another, and constituting an Adverbial phrase, are made to do duty for a sentence introduced by a Conjunction, e. g.:—

'*His mission being accomplished*, he returned home.'

'*No one seconding the amendment*, the original motion was carried.'

'*Gold having fallen in value*, the prices of commodities will rise.'

Each of the passages given in italics might have been expressed by a sentence, as, '*Since gold has fallen in value*, the prices of commodities will rise.'

II. The Latin Ablative Absolute, like its English equivalent, is an Adverbial phrase, and can be resolved in the same way into sentences, or phrases, expressive of Time, Cause, Condition, Concession, Manner, etc., e. g.:—

Time. Bello confecto, Romam redibit, *When the war is finished, he will return to Rome*, lit. *The war having been finished, he*, etc.

Cause. Nullâ coactâ manu, Menapii in sylvas confugiunt, *As they had collected no army, the Menapii fled to the woods.*

Condition. Hoc facto, tutus eris, *If you do this you will be safe.*

Concession. Reddito, quod abstulerat, argento, tamen supplicio affectus est, *Though he restored the money he had stolen he was punished nevertheless.*

Manner. Invidiam vitare paras virtute relictâ? *Are you trying to avoid envy by abandoning virtue?*

III. Two Substantives or a Substantive and Adjective often constitute an Ablative Absolute, by an ellipse of the Present Participle of the Verb **Sum** [which is wanting in Latin], as, Me duce, *I being your leader*, Fratre vivo, *My brother being alive. This form is* especially frequent in describing the time at which

an action took place by mentioning the magistrates in office at the time, e. g. L. Aemilio Paulo, C. Terentio Varrone consulibus ad Cannas pugnatum est, *The battle of Cannae was fought in the consulship of Lucius Aemilius Paulus and Caius Terentius Varro.*

IV. The Ablative of the Perfect Participle Passive sometimes supplies alone the place of the whole construction of the Ablative Absolute, as, errato, *an error having been made*, auspicato, *the auspices having been taken.* In these instances a Substantive of kindred meaning may be understood, as *errore* errato, i. q. errore facto. Sometimes a phrase or sentence supplies the place of the Substantive, as, Alexander, *audito Darium appropinquare*, cum exercitu obviam ire constituit, *Alexander, having heard that Darius was approaching* [lit. *Darius's approach having been heard of*] *resolved to go out against him with his army;* Excepto quod non simul esses, caetera laetus, *Cheerful in all respects, except that you are not with me.*

J.—THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

The Roman Calendar agreed with our own in the number of months, and of the days in each; but their manner of dating was very different.

Each month had three distinctive days, namely:—

The Kalends [Kalendae, Gen. -arum], which fell on the 1st.

The Nones [Nonae, Gen. -arum], which fell on the 5th, *usually.*

The Ides [Iduus, Gen. -uum], which fell on the 13th, *usually.*

But in March, May, July, and October, the Nones fell on the 7th and the Ides on the 15th.

In dating:—

(1) The 1st, 5th, and 13th were denoted by the Ablatives, Kalendis, Nonis, Idibus, with the name of the month added in agreement, as Kalendis Ianuariis, *the 1st of January.* But in March, May, July, and October, Nonis and Idibus stood for 7th and 15th respectively.

(2) The day before the Kalends, Nones, or Ides, was denoted by the Adverb pridie, *the day before*, governing an Accusative Case, as, pridie Kalendas Ianuarias, *the 31st of December*, pridie Idus Ianuarias, *the 12th of January*, pridie Idus Martias, *the 14th of March*.

(3) All other days were denoted by reckoning *back* from the next ensuing Kalends, Nones, or Ides. The reckoning included not only the day reckoned *from* but the day reckoned *to*; thus the 30th of December was called the *third* not the *second* day before the Kalends of January. The form for expressing the date thus found is as follows:—

Ante diem tertium Kalendas Ianuarias, *the 30th of December*.
Ante diem octavum Idus Ianuarias, *the 6th of January*.
Ante diem octavum Idus Martias, *the 8th of March*.
Ante diem duodevicesimum Kalendas Maias, *the 14th of April*.

A short form for expressing the above dates is as follows:—

a. d. III. Kal. Ian., *the 30th of December*.
a. d. VIII. Id. Ian., *the 6th of January*.
a. d. VIII. Id. Mart., *the 8th of March*.
a. d. XVIII. Kal. Mai., *the 14th of April*.

Note 1. The required number of days before any given Kalends, Nones, or Ides, may easily be ascertained on the fingers of the hand. Thus, it is required to find the correct Roman date of the 8th of March, a month in which the Ides fell on the 15th. Beginning with the thumb of the left hand, and calling it 8th, first finger 9th, and so on, we shall find that the 15th will fall on the third finger of the right hand, that is, eight fingers from the beginning. Hence eight is the number required.

Note 2. In leap-year the 24th of February [ante diem sextum Kalendas Martias, *or* a. d. VI. Kal. Mart.] was reckoned for two consecutive days. Hence this day was called dies bissextus, and leap-year itself annus bissextus.

Note 3. The phrase 'ante diem,' or 'antediem,' admits of government by Prepositions, as, Supplicationes edictae sunt in antediem quartum et tertium et pridie Idus Novembres, *Public thanksgivings were decreed for the 29th, 30th, and 31st of October;*

Supplicatio indicta est ex antediem quintum Idus Octobres, *A public thanksgiving was decreed, beginning from the 11th of October.*

Note 4. The months of July and August were called Quintilis and Sextilis, before the time of the Emperor Augustus.

K.—PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN[1].

ā is pronounced like the *a* in *father*.
ă is pronounced like the *a* in *along*.
ē is pronounced like the *a* in *pane*.
ae, *oe* } are pronounced like the *ay* in *bay*.
ĕ is pronounced like the *e* in *men*.
ī is pronounced like the *i* in *machine*.
ĭ is pronounced like the *i* in *pity*.
ō is pronounced like the *oa* in *moat*.
ŏ is pronounced like the *o* in *cot*.
ū is pronounced like the *u* in *rule*.
ŭ is pronounced like the *u* in *cut*.
au is pronounced like the *ow* in *power*.

i preceded by a vowel is properly pronounced like *y*: thus *maior*, *eius*, *Troia*, *cuius* [often written *major*, *ejus*, *Troja*, *cujus*] are pronounced *mā-yor*, *ē-yus*, *Trō-ya*, *cū-yus*.

c is always pronounced as *k*.

g is always pronounced as *g* in *get*.

s is almost always sharp [as the *s* of *sin*]; in a few words where the *s* comes between two vowels, as *rosa*, *musa*, *miser*, it has a soft sound like *z*.

[1] These rules are partly taken, in a shortened form, from the Syllabus of Latin pronunciation drawn up in 1873 at the request of the Head Masters of Schools. The extract, being necessarily brief, cannot give more than an approximate idea of the sounds of the Latin letters, and for further information the reader must refer to the work mentioned. [Deighton and Bell, Cambridge; Parker, Oxford.]

The other letters may (for the present) be pronounced as in English.

t is pronounced as in English, except that it never has the sound of *sh* when followed by *io*.

ch should be sounded as *k* followed by *h*.

bs, *bt* are sounded as *ps*, *pt*, and are often so written, as *aps*, *supter*.

L.—EXPLANATION OF CERTAIN TERMS USED BY GRAMMARIANS.

I. General Definitions.

Orthography. The science of correct spelling.

Etymology. The science of the origin and meaning of words.

Syntax. The science of the construction and arrangement of words in sentences.

Prosody. The science of the quantities of syllables.

Accidence. The part of grammar which deals with the parts of speech and their inflections.

II. Alphabet and Parts of Speech.

Uncial letters. Capitals.

Cursive letters. Small letters.

Mutes. The letters *c* (*k*, *q*), *g*, *b*; *t*, *d*; *p*, *b*, *f* (*v*).

Nasals. The letters *m*, *n*.

Liquids. The letters *l*, *r*.

Spirants. The letters *f*, *h*, *j*, *s*, *v*.

Double Letters. The letters *x*, *z*.

Gutturals. The throat sounds, viz. *c*, *g*, *h*, *n*, *q*, *x*.

Dentals. The teeth sounds, viz. *d*, *j*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *z*.

Labials. The lip sounds, viz. *p*, *b*, *m*, *f*, *v*.

Ultima. The last syllable of a word.

Penultima. The last syllable but one.

Antepenultima. The last syllable but two.

III. Nouns.

Parisyllabic. Having the same number of syllables in the Oblique Cases as in the Nominative, i. e. not increasing.

Imparisyllabic. Increasing in the Oblique Cases.

Nouns of Common Gender. Nouns which can be used either as Masculine or Feminine, to suit the sex referred to, as, parens, *a parent.*

Nouns of Epicene Gender. Certain names of animals having only one Gender, whichever be the sex referred to, as, passer, Masc. *a sparrow;* vulpes, Fem. *a fox.*

Nouns of Doubtful Gender. Nouns which are used either Masculine or Feminine, without regard to the sex signified, as, talpa, Masc. or Fem., *a mole.*

Heteroclite Nouns. Nouns having two or more different forms of Declension, as, elephantus, Gen. -i, Second Declension, *elephant,* and elephas, Gen. -antis, Third Declension; or having one form of the Nominative and more than one of the Oblique Cases, as, laurus, Gen. lauri or laurūs.

Heterogeneous Nouns. Nouns which have different Gender and different form in the Plural from the Singular, as,

Pergămus, Masc., *Pergamus,*	Pl. Pergama, -orum, Neut.
Carbăsus, Fem., *canvas,*	Pl. carbasa, -orum, Neut.
Coelum, Neut., *heaven,*	Pl. coeli, -orum, Masc.

Aptotes. Indeclinable Nouns, as, fas, *right,* quatuor, *four.*

Monoptotes. Nouns only used in one case, as, noctu, *by night.*

Diptotes. Nouns only used in two cases, as, Nom. fors, *chance,* Abl. forte.

Triptotes. Nouns only used in three cases, as, Acc. opem, *help,* Gen. opis, Abl. ope.

Objective Genitive. A Genitive dependent on a Substantive, and regarded as the Object to which that Substantive is directed, as, amor Dei, *love of God,* i. e. *our* love *towards* God.

Subjective Genitive. A Genitive dependent on a Substantive, and regarded as the Subject from which that Substantive proceeds, as, amor Dei, *the love of God,* i. e. *God's* love towards *us.*

Ethic Dative. A Dative of the Personal Pronouns, sometimes used to denote a general reference to the person mentioned. It admits of many renderings in English, according to the sense of the passage: e. g. Quid *mihi* Celsus agit? What is *my friend* Celsus doing? *Mihi* frigidus horror membra quatit, *As for me*, a cold shuddering convulses my limbs. An ille *mihi* liber, cui mulier imperat? Is he whom a woman rules a free man *in my estimation?* Pulset *mihi* lictorem, *Let me see him* strike a lictor.

Locative Case. Such forms as, Romae, *at Rome*, Tarenti, *at Tarentum*, which are thought to be remains of an old case specially denoting *at* a place, and therefore called Locative [locus, *a place*]. The forms humi, *on the ground*, domi, *at home*, belli, *at the wars*, militiae, *on military service*, vesperi, *in the evening*, and ruri, *in the country*, are explained by reference to this case.

IV. Verbs.

Periphrastic Conjugation. A Conjugation formed by uniting the Future Participle in *-rus*, or the Gerundive, with the Verb sum, as, amaturus sum, *I am about to love.*

Circumlocutory Conjugation. Same as *Periphrastic.*

Clipt Stem. A stem without its vowel character, as mon-, for monE-.

Trajective. A name applied to Verbs or other words governing the Dative Case.

Prolative. A name given to the Infinitive when used to *carry on* [proferre, prolatum] the construction of a Verb, as, amare possum, *I am able to love.*

V. Conjunctions, various Classes of.

Affirmative, as, profecto, *assuredly.*
Consecutive, as, ut, *so that*; igitur, *therefore.*
Concessive, as, etsi, *although*; licet, *although.*
Causal, as, enim, *for*; quod, *because.*

Conditional, as, si, *if;* nisi, *unless.*
Comparative, as, quasi, *as if.*
Final, as, ut, *in order that;* ne, *lest.*
Oppositional, as, tamen, *nevertheless.*
Temporal, as, priusquam, *before that;* quum, *when.*

VI. Etymological Figures.

Assimilation. When a consonant changes itself to one which follows it, or to one like that which follows; thus, sub-pono becomes suppono, *place under;* in-berbis becomes imberbis, *beardless.*

Aphaerĕsis. Cutting off letters from beginning, as, nosco *for* gnosco.

Syncŏpè. Taking away from middle, as, periclum *for* pericŭlum.

Apocŏpè. Cutting off from end, as, dic *for* dice.

Antithesis. Changing one letter for another, as, būbus *for* bōbus.

Metathĕsis. Transposition of a letter or syllable, as, colurnus *for* corulnus.

Tmesis. Separation of parts of a compound word by the insertion of one or more words between the parts, as, septem subiecta trioni *for* subiecta septemtrioni.

VII. Syntactical Figures.

Ellipse. Omission of something, e. g. of a Substantive, as, ferina, *venison* [supply caro]; of a Verb, as, Nam Polydorus ego, *For I am Polydorus* [supply sum].

Pleonasm. Using more words than are necessary to express the meaning, as, sic *ore* locutus est, where 'ore' is redundant.

Zeugma. When two words or two clauses have the same Verb, which does not apply equally to both; so that for one of them another Verb (to be gathered from the sense of the passage) must be mentally supplied, as, Inceptoque et sedibus haeret in ĩsdem, *He abides by his resolve, and remains seated in the same place.*

Asyndĕton. Omission of Conjunctions, as, veni, vidi, vici.

Hendiădys. Use of two Substantives instead of Substantive and Adjective to express one object, as, pateris libamus et auro *for* libamus aureis pateris.

Enallăgē. Use of one word for another, e. g. one part of speech for another, one case for another, use of Singular for Plural, etc.

Hypallăgē. Interchange of cases, as, dare classibus Austros *for* dare classes Austris.

Prolepsis. The poets sometimes put an Adjective or Participle in agreement with a Substantive, though the quality implied cannot belong to it until the action of the Verb to which the Substantive belongs is completed; as, Scuta *latentia* condunt, which means, *They stow away the shields so that they become hidden*, i. e. *hide the shields out of sight*; where latentia is said to belong to scuta *proleptically*, that is, by anticipation.

Synĕsis. When the Verb agrees not in grammar but in sense with its subject, as, pars in crucem acti sunt.

Anacolūthon. When the latter part of a sentence does not agree in syntax with the former; which sometimes happens when a parenthetical clause has intervened, so that the author has lost sight of the construction with which he set out.

VIII. Prosody.

Foot. A name given to a set of two or more syllables by which lines of Latin poetry are divided.

Scansion. } The distribution of a verse of poetry into its proper
Scanning. } feet.

Dactyl. A foot consisting of one long and two short syllables, as, cārmĭnă.

Spondee. A foot consisting of two long syllables, as, mēnsās.

Hex*ameter.* (The six-measure verse.) A verse of six feet, the last foot being a Spondee, and the last but one a Dactyl, as,

Tītўrĕ | tū pătŭ|laē rĕcŭ|bāns sūb | tēgmĭnĕ | fāgī||.

Pent*ameter.* (The five-measure verse.) A verse of five feet. It has two divisions, each consisting of two feet and a long

syllable, the two long syllables virtually constituting the fifth foot, as,

Sēmpĕr ĕt | Īlĭă|cās || Mātĕr ă|māvĭt ŏ|pēs||.

Synaloepha. Elision (or cutting off) of a final vowel before another vowel at the beginning of the following word, as, dīvērs' | ēxĭlĭă *for* dīvērsă ēxĭlĭă.

Ecthlipsis. Elision of *m* and its vowel in the same way, as, mōnstr' hōrrēnd' īnfōrme, etc., *for* mōnstrūm, hōrrēndūm īnfōrme.

Synaeresis. Contraction of two vowels into one, as, deīndĕ *for* dĕīndĕ.

Diaerĕsis. Resolution of one vowel into two, or of a diphthong into two vowels, as, ēvŏlŭissĕ *for* ēvolvīssĕ, aquāï *for* aquae.

Caesura. The point in a verse where a word ends, so as to cut [caedo] the foot in two, and the voice pauses a little. In a Hexameter line a Caesura should usually occur in the third foot, as,

Tītўrĕ | tū pătŭ|*āé* rĕcŭ|bans, etc.

M.—RULES FOR PARSING AND ANALYSIS.

I. **General directions for Parsing.** Write down the word to be parsed, and state what part of speech it is. After which,

II. **If the word be a Substantive,** state of what Declension, from what Nominative Case, and what it makes in the Genitive: add the Gender, Number, and Case of the word, and then,

(1) *If it be in the Nominative Case,* state whether it is Subject of a Finite Verb [and, if so, of what Finite Verb], as, *Hector* pugnavit, *Hector fought;* or whether it is in apposition to any Substantive [and, if so, to what Substantive], as, Hector, Priami *filius,* pugnavit, *Hector, the son of Priam, fought;* Croesus erat Lydiae *rex, Croesus was king of Lydia.*

(2) *If Accusative*, state whether Accusative of the Object after any Transitive Verb, as, Video *Priamum*, *I see Priam*; or Accusative of kindred meaning after any Intransitive Verb, as, Duram servit *servitutem*, *He serves a hard slavery*; or Accusative of Respect after any Verb or Adjective, as, Tremit *artus*, *He trembles as to his limbs*; Latus est *humeros*, *He is broad as to his shoulders*; or, if it be none of these, state whether it is the Subject of an Infinitive Mood, as, *Cyrum* victurum esse dixit, *He said that Cyrus would conquer*; or whether it expresses Duration of Time, Motion to a Place, or Measure of Space, as, Quinquaginta *annos* Romae vixit, *He lived fifty years at Rome*; *Athenas* pervēnit, *He arrived at Athens*; Hiberna viginti quinque *millia* aberant, *The winter quarters were twenty-five miles distant*; or whether it is in apposition to any other Accusative; or, lastly, whether it is governed by any Preposition, as, Ad *portas* est, *He is at the gates*.

(3) *If Genitive*, state whether it is dependent on any other Substantive, as, Hector *Priami* filius erat, *Hector was the son of Priam*; or whether it is governed by any Verb or Adjective, as, Arcadii miserescite *regis*, *Pity the Arcadian king*; *Divitiarum* cupidus est, *He is greedy of wealth*; or whether Genitive of Place, where [see § 76. 17, and App. N. III. *Locative Case*].

(4) *If Dative*, state whether Dative of the Remoter Object after any Verb, or whether governed by any word implying pleasantness, nearness, superiority, or their contraries, as, *Marco* credit, *He believes Marcus*; Belgae *Germanis* proximi sunt, *the Belgae are very near the Germans*; or whether it is a Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage [as it almost always is when it can be translated in English by the word '*for*'], as, Numa virgines *Vestae* lēgit, *Numa chose virgins for Vesta*; or whether it is Dative of the Agent after the Gerundive construction, as, Amandum est *tibi*, *You must love*; or whether it is put instead of an Appositional Nominative, as sometimes happens after the Verb sum, as, Haec sunt *impedimento* nobis, *These things are a hindrance* [lit. *for a hindrance*] *to us*.

(5) *If Ablative*, state whether it is Ablative of Agent, Instru-

ment, Place whence, Place where, Measure of Space, Point of Time, Price, Cause, Respect, Quality, Material, Manner, or Comparison; or whether it is used absolutely in conjunction with a Participle; or whether it is governed by a Preposition.

Note. If the word be an Adjective used Substantively, begin by stating the fact.

III. **If the word be an Adjective,** state of how many terminations, give Gender, Number, and Case, and name the Substantive with which it agrees. If the Adjective be of the Comparative or Superlative degree, state the fact, and give the Positive. If it be a Numeral or Pronominal Adjective, begin by stating the fact.

IV. **If the word be a Pronoun,** parse as for Substantives, if it be a Personal or Reflexive Pronoun. The other Pronouns are parsed like Adjectives, except that the Relative agrees in Gender, Number, and Person, with its Antecedent, or word it refers to, but in Case belongs to its own clause.

V. **If the word be a Verb, Participle, Gerund, or Supine,** state whether Transitive or Intransitive [if a Deponent Verb, add the word 'Deponent'; if an Anomalous Verb, as, possum, volo, nolo, etc., see p. 80, add the word 'Anomalous'; if an Impersonal Verb, add the word 'Impersonal'; if the Verb sum, add the word 'Auxiliary'], and of what Conjugation; then write down the principal parts of the Verb, i. e. the Pres. Indic. Act., Infin. Pres., Perf. Indic., and the Supine, and then,

(1) *If a Finite Verb* [i. e. *not an Infinitive Mood*], give the Voice, Mood, Tense, Person, and Number, and state what Subject or Nominative Case it agrees with.

N. B. If the Verb be *Impersonal* [i. e. one which in English has the word *it* for its Subject, apparently], as, iuvat, *it delights*, interest, *it is of importance*, taedet, *it wearies*, etc., the Subject in Latin is either, (*a*) an Infinitive, as, *Currĕre* nos iuvat, *It delights us to run*, or *We delight to run*, i. e. currĕre, *the act of running* [Subject], iuvat nos, *delights us* [Verb with Object]; or, (*b*) a Clause, as, Magni interest ut te videam, *It is of great importance that I should see you*, i. e. Ut te videam, That I should see you

[Subject], magni interest, *is of great importance* [Verb with Genitive of Value]; or, (*c*) a Noun understood, of kindred meaning with the Verb, as, Taedet me vitae, *It wearies me of life*, or *I am weary of life*, i. e. *Taedium* vitae, *Weariness of life* [Subject], taedet me, *wearies me* [Verb with Object.

(2) *If an Infinite Verb* [i. e. *an Infinitive Mood*], give the Voice, Mood, and Tense, and state whether it is dependent on any Verb, Participle, or Adjective, as, *Audire* cupio, *I wish to hear;* Audax omnia *perpeti, Bold to endure all things;* or whether it is in Apposition to any other Infinitive or to a Noun, as, Vivĕre est *valēre, To live is to be well.*

(3) *If a Gerund in* **-dum**, state what Preposition it is governed by; *if in* **-di**, state upon what Substantive or Adjective it depends; *if in* **-do**, state whether Dative or Ablative; if Dative, state to what Noun or Verb it is joined, and if Ablative, state whether of Instrument, Manner, or Cause, and to what Verb it belongs, or whether it is governed by a Preposition.

(4) *If a Supine in* **-um**, state what Verb of Motion it follows; *if in* **-u**, state what Noun or Adjective it qualifies.

(5) *If a Participle*, give the Voice and Tense, and then parse the word as an Adjective.

(6) *If a Gerundive*, parse as for a Participle, omitting Voice and Tense. In the forms amandum est, monendum est, etc., the Gerundive does not agree with any Substantive; therefore, after the word 'Case,' add the words 'Neuter Gerundive Construction, implying necessity.'

Notes on the Verb. (*a*) If the Verb be Deponent, only the Pres. Indic., Pres. Infin., and Perfect Participle are to be given as the chief parts of the Verb, as, utor, uti, usus.

(*b*) Sometimes a Finite Verb agrees not with the *form* but with the *sense* of its Nominative, as, *Pars* epulis *onĕrant* mensas, *Some* [lit. *a part*] *load the tables with victuals*, where a Plural Verb is put in agreement with a Nominative of Singular Number. In parsing onerant we should say that it agreed *in sense* with pars, or *that it agreed* with the *plural notion* conveyed by pars.

VI. **If the word be an Adverb**, state what Verb, Adjective, or Adverb it modifies in the sentence; if a Comparative or Superlative, state its Positive.

VII. **If the word be a Preposition**, state the word it governs. If it be a Preposition governing two cases, state the reason for the case of the Noun it governs in the present instance.

VIII. **If the word be a Conjunction**, state whether it is Coordinative or Subordinative, and mention the words, phrases, or clauses it connects.

IX. **If the word be an Interjection**, mention whether any Noun depends on it in the Nominative, Accusative, or Dative cases, as, Heu *pietas! Alas, the piety!* En quatuor *aras! Lo, four Altars!* Hei *mihi! Ah, me!*

X. **Construction of the Sentence.** Besides parsing each word of a sentence separately, mention should be made of any Subordinate clauses in it, i.e. clauses which perform the functions of Substantives, Adjectives, or Adverbs. Thus the Accusative and Infinitive is always a Substantival clause, and therefore performs one of the commonest functions of the Substantive, viz. standing as Subject or Object of a Verb. If the Verb be Impersonal, the Acc. and Inf. is its Subject. (See above, IV. 1. *Note a.*) If the Verb be a Verb of *declaring, perceiving, thinking, knowing, believing*, etc., the Acc. and Inf. is its Object, as, Te valere sentit, *He perceives that you are well*, i. e. Sentit, *He perceives* [Subject and Verb], te valere, *the fact of your being well* [Object]. The Conjunction ut, when used not strictly, in its final sense of 'in order that,' nor in its consecutive sense of 'so that,' but loosely, as a connecting particle (like the English word '*that*' in such a sentence as 'I am glad that you have come'), introduces a Substantival Sentence standing as Subject to the Verb, e. g. Meâ refert ut venias, *It is important to me that you come*, or Object, as, Imperavit mihi, ut hoc facerem, *He commanded me to do this.* **Ne** and **quod** are similarly used, e. g. Vereor ne hoc facias, *I fear that you will do this;* Gaudeo quod rediit, I am glad that he has

returned. Again, all Interrogative Sentences introduced by such Particles as qualis, unde, etc. [see Catech. iv. 9. p. 96] may be Substantival Sentences, standing as Subject or Object, e. g. Incertum est quis sit, *It is uncertain who he is*, i. e. *Who he is* [Subject] *is uncertain* [Verb, etc.]; Nescio quis sit, *I know not who he is*, i. e. *I know not* [Verb] *who he is* [Object].

On the other hand, **ut** and **ne** meaning *in order that* and *lest*, and **quod** meaning *because*, introduce Adverbial Sentences expressing the purpose and cause respectively of the action denoted by the Principal Verb. The other Subordinative Conjunctions also, as quum, priusquam, dum, etc., introduce Adverbial Sentences, expressing Time, Cause, Concession, etc.

Sentences introduced by the Relative qui, quae, quod, in its simple sense of *who* or *which* [together with such Particles as ubi, unde, etc., when used in a strictly Relative, not Interrogative, sense, i. e. when equivalent to in quo, a quo, etc.], being usually explanatory of some Noun, are Adjectival. But the Relative meaning *since*, *although*, etc., introduces an Adverbial Sentence.

XI. Summary of Rules for Subordinate Clauses.

(1) An Accusative and Infinitive is a Substantival Clause. When it occurs, state whether it is Subject or Object of a Verb, or whether it is in Apposition to a Noun.

(2) Clauses introduced by **ut**, **ne**, and **quod** are sometimes Subject or Object of a Verb, or stand in Apposition to a Noun, defining its meaning. When they occur, state the Verbs to which they are Subject or Object, or the Nouns to which they are in Apposition.

(3) Clauses introduced by Interrogative Particles, as cur, qualis, etc., are Substantival if they depend upon a Verb. When such a Clause occurs, state whether it is Subject or Object of the Verb.

Note. Dependency on a Verb is often indicated by a Subjunctive, as, Unde venit [Indic.]? *Whence comes he?* Nescio unde *veniat* [Subj.], *I know not whence he comes.*

(4) Clauses introduced by Subordinative Conjunctions are Adverbial. When they occur, state the Verb (or sometimes Adjective or Adverb) which they modify.

(5) Clauses introduced by the Relative Pronoun qui, quae, quod (or its particles ubi, unde) in its simple sense of *who* or *which*, are Adjectival. When such a Clause occurs, state what Noun it qualifies.

XII. **Analysis of Sentences.** A little practice in parsing, in accordance with the above rules, will enable a learner to resolve complex Latin Sentences into their simple elements without difficulty, by means of the following directions:—

(1) *Essential terms of the Sentence.* Every Sentence must contain a Subject and a Verb, as, Canes latrant, *Dogs bark.*

(2) *Adjuncts, or accidental terms.* Both Subject and Verb may have words, phrases, or clauses added to them to complete their meaning. These may be called the Adjuncts or Accidental terms of the Sentence. The Adjuncts of the Subject are called Attributes, the Adjuncts of the Verb are, (*a*) the Object, (*b*) the Complement, (*c*) the Adverbial.

(3) *The Subject.* The Subject must be a Noun, or the equivalent of a Noun, as, (*a*) a Personal Pronoun either expressed in the Sentence or implied in the Verb-ending, (*b*) an Adjective used Substantively, (*c*) an Infinitive, or Accusative with Infinitive, (*d*) a whole Clause introduced by a Conjunction.

(4) *The Verb.* The Verb in a Sentence must be a Finite Verb, except in Oblique Statements, when it may be an Infinitive.

(5) *The Attribute.* The Attribute is usually an Adjective, but it may also be a Dependent Genitive, a Noun in Apposition, a Noun governed by a Preposition, or a Relative Clause.

(6) *The Object.* The Object follows Transitive Verbs. Like the Subject, it must be a Noun or the equivalent of a Noun, and may have Attributes. It is of two kinds, (*a*) the Nearer Object, i. e. that upon which the action of the Verb falls *directly*, as, Do *librum, I give a book*, (*b*) the Remoter Object, i.e. that upon

which the action of the Verb falls *indirectly*, as, Do librum *puero*, *I give a book to the boy.*

Note. The Remoter Object is usually in the Dative Case. But some Verbs are followed by two Accusatives, of which it is difficult to say which represents the Nearer and which the Remoter Object, as, Docuit me literas. One of these Objects is sometimes an Infinitive Mood, as, Milites *proficisci* iubet, or a Clause, as, Hortatur eos, *ne animo deficiant.*

(7) *The Complement.* The Complement is a Noun, or Adjective, linked on to the Subject by a Copulative Verb, the sense of which it completes. Also the Noun standing in Apposition to the Direct Object of a Factitive Verb must be considered a Complement, as, Urbem *Romam* appellavit.

(8) *The Adverbial.* All words, phrases, or clauses that give circumstantial details respecting the action of the Verb, e. g. as regards the Time when, Place where, Manner in which, Cause why, or Instrument by which, it takes Place are called Adverbials. Most Adverbs, many Ablative Cases, and the Accusative of Respect, belong to this class.

(9) *Connectives.* Words uniting clauses together are called Connectives. All Coordinative and Subordinative Conjunctions and a few Adverbs belong to this class.

(10) *Complex Sentence.* A group of Sentences joined together in such a manner that one is Principal (i. e. simply states, asks a question, or commands) and the others Subordinate, explaining various parts of the Principal Sentence, is called a Complex Sentence. Each of the individual sentences of which it consists is called a Clause. In the Analysis write down all Subordinate Clauses as belonging to one or other of the terms of the Principal Clause: afterwards each Subordinate Clause may itself be analysed in detail.

Caution. The Subject, Object, Complement, and Adverbial of a Sentence are determined solely with reference to its Verb. The Noun in the Subject Column *must be the Subject of the Verb of the Sentence*, and not of any other Verb; the Adverbial in the Adverbial Column *must qualify nothing but the Verb of the Sentence;*

and so with the two other terms. Care must be taken to test the accuracy of an analysis by reference to this rule. It is a very common mistake to set down as Adverbial something which does not really belong to the Verb; e. g. Marcus Gallum fortiter pugnantem occidit, *Marcus killed a Gaul who was fighting bravely.* Here fortiter is an Adverbial, but it must not be put in the Adverbial Column, because it does not qualify occidit, the Verb of the Sentence, but pugnantem, an Attribute of Gallum. The real analysis is, Marcus [Subject], occidit [Verb], Gallum fortiter pugnantem [Object, with qualified Attribute].

Attributes, on the other hand, are determined with reference to the Nouns they qualify. If an Attribute belongs to a Noun which is Subject, it must be put in the Subject Column with its Noun; if to a Noun, which is Object, it must be put in the Object Column, etc.

The following sentences are analysed at full length on the next page.

Caesar, B. G. vii. 50. Cum acerrimè cominus pugnaretur, hostes loco et numero, nostri virtute confiderent, subito sunt Aedui visi ab latere nostris aperto, quos Caesar ab dextra parte alio ascensu, manus distinendae causâ miserat.

Cic. de Senect. § 22. Tum senex recitavit iudicibus eam fabulam quam proximè scripserat, quaesivitque num illud carmen hominis desipientis esse videretur?

Cic. pro Rosc. Am. § 70. Civitas Atheniensium prudentissima fuisse traditur.

N. B. All words wanting to complete the sense of the Latin Sentence are enclosed in brackets.

Nearer and Remoter Objects are indicated by the letters N and R.

Abbreviations: Prin. Principal; Attrib. Attributive; Advl. Adverbial; Subst. Substantival.

XIII. Examples of Analysis.

Kind of Sentence.	Connective.	Subject with Attribute.	Verb with Complement.	Object with Attribute.	Adverbial.
Prin.		Aedui, quos Caesar ab ... miserat	visi sunt	.. ..	subito (Manner) cum .... confiderent (Time) ab latere nostris aperto (Place)
Attrib.		Caesar	miserat	quos	ab dextrâ parte (Place) alio ascensu (Place) manus .... causâ (Cause)
Advl.	cum	(pugna)	pugnaretur	.. ..	acerrimè (Manner) cominus (Manner)
Advl.	(et cum)	hostes	confiderent	.. ..	loco et numero (Cause)
Advl.	(et)	nostri	(confiderent)	.. ..	virtute (Cause)
Prin.		senex	recitavit	eam fabulam quam proximè scripserat (N.) iudicibus (R.)	tum (Time)
Attrib.		(is)	scripserat	quam (N.)	proximè (Time)
Prin.	-que	(is)	quaesivit	num illud carmen hominis desipientis esse videretur (N.)	
Subst.	num	illud carmen	videretur esse (carmen) hominis desipientis		
Prin.		Civitas Athe-	traditur pru-		

XIV. Examples of Parsing.

The passage just analysed from Cicero de Senect. § 22, is here parsed at full length. The following abbreviations are used:—

Acc. . .	Accusative.	Neut. . .	Neuter.
Act. . .	Active.	Nom. . .	Nominative.
Adj. . .	Adjective.	Obj. . .	Object.
Adv. . .	Adverb.	Part. . .	Participle.
Compar. .	Comparative.	Pass. . .	Passive.
Conj. . .	Conjunction.	Pers. . .	Personal.
Coord. .	Coordinate.	Pl. . . .	Plural.
Dat. . .	Dative.	Plpf. . .	Pluperfect.
Decl. . .	Declension.	Pres. . .	Present.
Demonstr.	Demonstrative.	Pron. . .	Pronoun.
Fem. . .	Feminine.	Prop. . .	Properly.
Gen. . .	Genitive.	R. . . .	Remoter.
Imperf. .	Imperfect.	Relat. . .	Relative.
Ind. . .	Indicative.	S. P. . .	Simple Past.
Inf. . .	Infinitive.	Sing. . .	Singular.
Interrog. .	Interrogative.	Subj. . .	Subjunctive.
Intrans. .	Intransitive.	Subst. . .	Substantive.
Masc. . .	Masculine.	Superl. .	Superlative.
N. . . .	Nearer.	Trans. .	Transitive.

Tum Adverb of Time, modifying recitavit.

senex Subst. 3rd Decl. from senex, senis [prop. an Adj. used substantively], Masc. Sing. Nom. being Subj. to recitavit.

recitavit Verb Trans. 1 Conj. from recit-o, -are, -avi, -atum, Act. Ind. S. P. 3rd Sing. agreeing with Nom. senex.

iudicibus Subst. 3rd Decl. from iudex, iudicis, Masc. Pl. Dat. being R. Obj. after recitavit.

eam Demonstr. Pron. from is, ea, id, Fem. Sing. Acc. agreeing with fabulam.

fabulam Subst. 1st Decl. from fabula, -ae, Fem. Sing. Acc. being N. Obj. after recitavit.

quam Relat. Pron. from qui, quae, quod, Fem. Sing. 3rd Pers. being in agreement with its antecedent fabulam; Acc. Case, being N. Object after scripserat.

proximè Adv. modifying scripserat, Superl. degree from prope, Compar. propius, Superl. proximè.

scripserat Verb Trans. 3rd Conj. from scribo, scribere, scripsi, scriptum, Act. Ind. Plpf. 3rd Sing. agreeing with Pronoun of 3rd Pers. implied in its ending.

Note. Quam proximè scripserat is an Adjectival Sentence qualifying fabulam.

quaesivit Verb Trans. from quaero, quaerere, quaesivi, quaesitum, Act. Ind. S. P. 3rd Sing. agreeing with Nom. senex, which is to be supplied from the preceding sentence.

-que Enclitic[1] Coord. Conj. connecting quaesivit with recitavit.

num Interrog. Adverb modifying videretur.

illud Demonstr. Pron. from ille, illa, illud, Neut. Sing. Nom. agreeing with carmen.

carmen Subst. 3rd Decl. from carmen, carminis, Neut. Sing. Nom. being Subj. of videretur.

hominis Subst. 3rd Decl. from homo, hominis, Masc. Sing. Gen. dependent on [carmen].

desipientis Part. Pres. Act. (used as Adj.) from Verb Intrans. 3rd Conj. desipio, -ere, Masc. Sing. Gen. agreeing with hominis.

esse Auxiliary Verb from sum, fui, esse, Inf. Imperf. dependent on videretur.

videretur Verb Trans. 2nd Decl. from video, vidēre, vidi, visum, Pass. Subj. Impf. 3rd Sing. agreeing with Nom. carmen.

Note. Num illud carmen hominis desipientis videretur is a Substantival clause, standing as Object to quaesivit.

[1] That is, attached to the end of some word, as, quaesivit-que.

N.—VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

abl. . . .	ablative.	interrog. . .	interrogative.
acc. . . .	accusative.	intr. . . .	intransitive.
adj. . . .	adjective.	m.	masculine.
adv. . . .	adverb.	n.	neuter.
anomal. . .	anomalous.	nom. . . .	nominative.
c.	common.	pers. . . .	personal.
compar. . .	comparative.	pl.	plural.
conj. . . .	conjunction.	prep. . . .	preposition.
dat. . . .	dative.	pron. . . .	pronoun.
defect. . .	defective.	rel. . . .	relative.
demonstr. .	demonstrative.	subst. . . .	substantive.
dep. . . .	deponent.	sup. . . .	supine.
f.	feminine.	superl. . .	superlative.
gov. . . .	governing.	tr.	transitive.
impers. . .	impersonal.	v.	verb.
indef. . . .	indefinite.		

*** The Perfect, Supine, and Conjugation are given with each Verb; the Genitive Case, Declension, and Gender with each Substantive; and the Nominative terminations with each Adjective. With Adjectives of only one termination in the Nominative the Genitive Case is given, as, amens, amentis.

A.

a or **ab**, prep. gov. abl. *from, by.*

ab-ĕrant, **ab-est**, **ab-fuit**, } from **absum.**

ab-sum, -esse, -fui, v. anomal. *to be absent, distant, far from.*

ab-sūmo, -sumpsi, -sumptum, v. tr. 3, *to consume, spend.*

ac-cĭpio, -cēpi, -ceptum, v. tr. 3, *to receive.*

accūrātè, adv. *accurately.*

accūso, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. 1, *to accuse.*

ad, prep. gov. acc. *to, at.*

adeò, adv. *so, to such a degree.*

adhuc, *adv. up to this time, still, yet.*

ad-ŏrior, -ortus, v. tr. dep. 4, *to attack.*

ad-veho, -vexi, -vectum, v. tr. 3, *to bring, carry to.*

Aenēas, -ae, subst. 1, m. *Aeneas*, a Trojan hero.

aestimo, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. 1, *to estimate, value.*

af-fĭcio, -fēci, -fectum, v. tr. 3, *to affect, treat.*

affirmo, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. 1, *to affirm, assert.*

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj. *belonging to another, strange, foreign.*

alius, -a, -ud, pronominal adj. *other, another.*

alter, -ĕra, -ĕrum, pronominal adj. the other of two, another.

amens, -entis, adj. *mad.*
amo, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. 1, *to love.*
amor, -ōris, subst. 3, m. *love.*
an, interrog. adv. *whether, or.*
angustus, -a, -um, adj. *narrow.*
animus, -i, subst. 2, m. *the mind.* Pl. animi, -orum, *spirits, courage.*
annus, -i, subst. 2, m. *a year.*
ante, prep. gov. acc. *before.*
Arar, -āris, subst. 3 m. *the Arar,* a river in Gaul.
aratrum, -i, subst. 2, n. *a plough.*
arbor, -ŏris, subst. 3, f. *a tree.*
arduus, -a, -um, adj. *steep, difficult.*
argentum, -i, subst. 2, n. *silver, money.*
Asia, -ae, subst. 1, f. *Asia.*
ater, -tra, -trum, adj. *black.*
Athēnae, -ārum, subst. pl. 1, f. *Athens.*
atque, conj. *and* (sometimes *as, than*).
atro, from **ater.**
audio, -ivi, -itum, v. tr. 4, *to hear.*
ausculfo, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. 1, *to listen.*
aut, conj. *either, or.*
avis, -is, subst. 3, f. *a bird.*

B.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj. *barbarous;* or as subst. **barbarus, -i,** 2, m. *a barbarian.*
beatus, -a, -um, adj. *happy.*
Belgae, -arum, subst. pl. 1, m. *the Belgae.*
bellum, -i, subst. 2, n. *war.*
benè, adv. *well.*
bonus, -a, -um, adj. *good.*
Brūtus, -i, subst. 2, m. *Brutus,* a Roman patriot.

C.

Caesar, -āris, subst. 3, m. *Caesar,* a celebrated Roman.
calceus, -i, subst. 2, m. *a shoe.*
Cămillus, -i, subst. 2, m. *Camillus,* a celebrated Roman.
căpio, cēpi, captum, v. tr. 3, *to take.*
***capĭtis,* from caput.**
capta est, from **capio.**
captivus, -i, subst. 2, m. *a captive.*
Capua, -ae, subst. 2, f. *Capua,* a town in Italy.
căput, capĭtis, subst. 3, n. *the head.*
Caractăcus, -i, subst. 2, m. *Caractacus,* an Ancient Briton.
cărco, -ui, -ĭtum, v. intr. 2, *to want, be without.*
castra, -ōrum, subst. pl. 2, n. *a camp.*
cāsus, -ūs, subst. 4, m. *chance, accident.*
Căto, -ōnis, subst. 3, m. *Cato,* a celebrated Roman.
causa, -ae, subst. 1, f. *a cause.* Abl. **causā,** *for the sake.*
căveo, cāvi, cautum, v. intr. 2, *to beware.*
cēdo, cessi, cessum, v. intr. 3, *to yield, retreat.*
Christus, -i, subst. 2, m. *Christ.*
cĭbus, -i, subst. 2, m. *food.*
citiùs, adv. compar. from **cito,** *more quickly.*
citò, adv. *quickly.*
cĭvis, -is, subst. 3, c. *a citizen.*
civitas, -ātis, subst. 3, f. *a state.*
clam, adv. *secretly.* Also prep. gov. acc. or abl. *without the knowledge of.*
Claudius, -i, subst. 2, m. *Claudius,* a Roman Emperor.
commissa esset, from **committo.**
com-mitto, -mīsi, -missum, v. tr. 3, *to commit, entrust.*
compăro, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. 1, *to prepare.*
condo, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, v. tr. 3, *to build, found.*
confecerit, } from **conficio.**
confectus, }
con-fĭcio, -fēci, -fectum, v. tr. 3, *to finish.*
cōnor, -atus, v. tr. dep. 1, *to try, endeavour.*
consto, -stĕti, no sup. v. intr. 1, *to stand firm.* As impers. **constat,** *it is well known.*
consŭlo, -ului, -ultum, v. tr. 3, *to consult, deliberate.*
consultus, from **consulo.**

contendo, -ndi, -ntum, v. intr. 3, *to contend.*
cor, cordis, subst. 3, n. *heart.*
Corinthus, -i, subst. 2, f. *Corinth,* a city in Greece.
cornu, -ūs, subst. 4, n. *a horn.*
copia, -ae, subst. 1, f. *plenty.* Pl. **copiae, -arum,** *forces.*
Crassus, -i, subst. 2, m. *Crassus,* a celebrated Roman.
creârunt for **creavērunt,** from **creo.**
crēdo, credĭdi, credĭtum, v. tr. 3, *to believe.*
creo, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. 1, *to create, make.*
cresco, crēvi, crētum, v. intr. 3, *to grow, increase.*
Croesus, -i, subst. 2, m. *Croesus,* king of Lydia in Asia Minor.
cuius, from **qui** or **quis.**
culpa, -ae, subst. 1, f. *a fault.*
cum, prep. gov. abl. *with.*
cunctor, -ātus, v. intr. dep. 1, *to delay.*
cupidior, compar. of **cupidus.**
cupidus, -a, -um, adj. *desirous, covetous.*
cupio, cupīvi, cupītum, v. tr. 3, *to desire.*
cur, interrog. adv. *why?*
curo, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. 1, *to take care of, attend to.*
Cyprus, -i, subst. 2, f. *Cyprus,* an island in the Mediterranean.
Cyrus, -i, subst. 2, m. *Cyrus,* a king of Persia.

D.

damnâsse for **damnavisse,** from **damno.**
damno, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. 1, *to condemn.*
de, prep. gov. abl. *from, concerning.*
debeo, -ui, -ĭtum, v. tr. 2, *to owe.* [Used to translate the English auxiliary *ought.*]
deesset, from **desum.**
de-fĕro, -tuli, -latum, v. tr. anomal. *to bring, entrust, deliver.*
dens, dentis, subst. 3, m. *a tooth.*
deprehendo, -ndi, -nsum, v. tr. 3, *to catch, find out.*
descrībo, -scripsi, -scriptum, v. tr. 3, *to describe.*
desit, from **desum.**
de-sum, -esse, -fui, v. intr. anomal. *to be wanting, fail.*
detrecto, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. 1, *to decline.*
Deus, -i, subst. 2, m. *God.*
devicimus, from **devinco.**
devinco, -vīci, -victum, v. tr. 3, *to conquer, subdue.*
dextra, -ae, subst. 1, f. *a right hand.*
dīco, dixi, dictum, v. tr. 3, *to say, tell.*
dictator, -oris, subst. 3, m. *a dictator.*
dictūrum esse, from **dico.**
dies, -ēi, subst. 5, f. *a day.*
difficĭlis, -e, adj. *difficult.*
dĭlĭgo, -lexi, -lectum, v. tr. 3, *to love.*
Dionysius, -i, subst. 2, m. *Dionysius,* tyrant of Syracuse.
diruo, -rui, -rŭtum, v. tr. 3, *to destroy.*
discēdo, -cessi, -cessum, v. intr. 3, *to depart.*
disco, dĭdĭci, no sup. v. tr. 3, *to learn.*
ditissimus for **divitissimus,** superl. from **dives.**
dīves, -vĭtis, adj. *rich.*
divitiae, -ārum, subst. pl. 1, f. *wealth, riches.*
divitior, compar. from **dives.**
dixit, from **dico.**
dŏceo, docui, doctum, v. tr. 2, *to teach.*
dŏmus, -i and **-ūs,** subst. 2 and 4, f. *a house.*
dubĭto, -āvi, -ātum, v. usually intr. 1, *to doubt.*
dubius, -a, -um, adj. *doubtful.*
duco, duxi, ductum, v. tr. 3, *to lead.*
dux, ducis, subst. 3, c. *a leader, general.*

E.

e or **ex**, prep. gov. abl. *out of, from.*
ea, from **is**.
educo, -duxi, -ductum, v. tr. 3, *to draw out.*
ego, mei, pers. pron. *I.*
ĕmo, ēmi, emptum, v. tr. 3, *to buy.*
ensis, -is, subst. 3, m. *a sword.*
eo, abl. from **is**.
eo, īvi, ĭtum, v. intr. anomal. *to go.*
eò, adv. *thither.*
eōrum, eos. } from **is**.
ĕpistola, -ae, subst. 1, f. *a letter.*
erat, es, esse, est, estis, } from **sum**.
et, conj. *and* [**et . . et** = *both . . and*].
ĕtiam, conj. *even, also.*
eum, from **is**.
excīdo, -cīdi, -cīsum, v. tr. 3, *to cut down.*
exspecto, -āvi, ātum, v. tr. 1, *to expect, await.*

F.

Fabricius, -i, subst. 2, m. *Fabricius*, a Roman name.
facĭlis, -e, adj. *easy.*
faciliùs, adv. compar. from **facile**, *more easily.*
făcio, fēci, factum, v. tr. 3, *to do, make.*
factus, from **fio**.
fēci, from **facio**.
fero, tuli, lātum, v. tr. anomal. *to bear, carry.*
fĭĕri, from **fio**.
fīlius, -i, subst. 2, m. *a son.*
fio, factus, v. intr. anomal. *to be made, become.*
flūmen, -mĭnis, subst. 3, n. *a river.*
frūmentum, -i, subst. 2, n. *corn.*
fŭgio, fūgi, fugĭtum, v. tr. and intr. 3, *to fly, escape.*
fuisse, fuit, } from **sum**.
furtum, -i, subst. 2, n. *theft.*
futurum, from **sum**.

G.

Galli, -orum, subst. pl. 2, m. *the Gauls.*
Gallicus, -a, -um, adj. *Gallic.*
gaudeo, gavisus, v. intr. semi-dep. 2, *to rejoice.*
gĕnu, -ūs, subst. 4, n. *a knee.*
Germani, -ōrum, subst. pl. 2, m. *the Germans.*
glădius, -i, subst. 2, m. *a sword.*
Graecia, -ae, subst. 1, f. *Greece.*
Graecus, -a, -um, adj. *Greek, Grecian.*
gutta, -ae, subst. 1, f. *a drop.*

H.

habeo, -ui, -ĭtum, v. tr. 2, *to have, hold, esteem.*
habĭto, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. and intr. 1, *to dwell.*
hāc, haec, } from **hic**.
Hannĭbal, -bălis, subst. 3, m. *Hannibal*, a great Carthaginian general.
haud, adv. *not.*
Hector, -ŏris, subst. 3, m. *Hector* a Trojan hero.
Hercŭles, -is, subst. 3, m. *Hercules*, a mythical hero.
hi, from **hic**.
hīberna, -ōrum, subst. pl. 2, n. *winter quarters.*
hic, haec, hoc, demonstr. pron. *this.*
hìc, adv. *here.*
his, hoc, } from **hic**.
hŏmo, -mĭnis, subst. 3, m. *a man.*
hŏnor, -ōris, subst. 3, m. *honour.*
hōra, -ae, subst. 1, f. *an hour.*
Horātius, -i, subst. 2, m. *Horatius*, a Roman poet.
hortor, -atus, v. tr. dep. 1, *I exhort.*
hortus, -i, subst. 2, m. *a garden.*
hostis, -is, subst. 3, c. *an enemy.*
huic, from **hic**.

I.

iam, adv. *now, already.*
iamdūdum, adv. *now, for a long time.*
ibit, from **eo.**
Idus, -uum, subst. pl. 4, f. *the Ides*, a name given to the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and to the 13th of the other months.
ignārus, -a, -um, adj. *ignorant.*
ille, illa, illud, demonstr. and pers. pron. *that, he.*
immortalis, -e, adj. *immortal.*
impedimentum, -i, subst. 2, n. *a hindrance.*
impĕrium, -i, subst. 2, n. *command.*
impĕro, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. 1, *to command.*
in, prep. gov. acc. and abl. *into* (with acc.), *in* (with abl.).
incertus, -a, -um, adj. *uncertain.*
incĭpio, -cēpi, -ceptum, v. tr. 3, *to begin.*
incŏlo, -colui, -cultum, v. tr. 3, *to inhabit.*
incredĭbĭlis, -e, adj. *incredible.*
inde, adv. *thence, from thence.*
indemnātus, -a, -um, adj. *uncondemned.*
infectus, -a, -um, adj. *unaccomplished.*
ingrĕdior, ingressus, v. tr. dep. 3, *to enter.*
iniūria, -ae, subst. 1, f. *injury.*
insānus, -a, -um, adj. *mad.*
insŭla, -ae, subst. 1, f. *an island.*
intellĭgo, -lexi, -lectum, v. tr. 3, *to understand, learn.*
interest, v. anomal. impers. *it makes a difference, is important.*
interfectus, from **interfĭcio.**
interfĭcio, -fēci, -fectum, v. tr. 3, *to kill.*
interfuimus, from **intersum.**
interrŏgo, -avi, -atum, v. tr. 1, *to ask.*
intersum, -fui, v. intr. anomal. *to be present at.*
iri, passive infinitive present from **eo.**
is, ea, id, demonstr. and pers. pron. *that, he.*
ita, adv. *so, thus.*
ius, iuris, subst. 3, n. *right.*

L.

laetus, -a, -um, adj. *joyful.*
lātus, perfect passive participle from **fero.**
lātus, -a, -um, adj. *broad, wide.*
lătus, latĕris, subst. 3, n. *a side.*
lēgātus, -i, subst. 2, m. *an ambassador.*
lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, v. tr. 3, *to choose, read.*
Leōnĭdas, -ae, subst. 1, m. *Leonidas*, a king of Sparta who fell at Thermopylae.
līber, -ĕra, -ĕrum, adj. *free.*
lĭber, -bri, subst. 2, m. *a book.*
licet, licuit, v. intr. 2, impers. *it is permitted.*
ligneus, -a, -um, adj. *wooden.*
lĭquor, inf. **lĭqui**, no perfect participle, v. intr. dep. 3, *to flow.*
litĕra, -ae, subst. 1, f. *a letter of the alphabet.* Pl. **literae, -ārum**, *literature, an epistle.*
lŏcus, -i, subst. 2, m. *a place.*
Lucullus, -i, subst. 2, m. *Lucullus*, a Roman general.

M.

machĭna, -ae, subst. 1, f. *a machine, engine.*
magnus, -a, -um, adj. *great.*
maior, maius, compar. from **magnus**, *greater.*
măneo, mansi, mansum, v. tr. and intr. 2, *remain, await.*
mănĭfestus, -a, -um, adj. *manifest.*
mansērunt, from **maneo.**
mănus, -ūs, subst. 4, f. *a hand, band of soldiers.*
Marcus, -i, subst. 2, m. *Marcus*, a Roman name.
Martius, -a, -um, adj. *of March.*
māter, -tris, subst. 3, f. *a mother.*
matūrè, adv. from **maturus**, *early, speedily.*

maxĭmus, -a, -um, adj. superl. from **magnus**, *greatest, very great.* Quam maximus, *the greatest possible.*
mĕ, from **ego**.
mĕdius, -a, -um, adj. *middle.*
mĕmĭni, defective v. tr. *to remember.*
mĕmŏria, -ae, subst. 1, f. *memory.*
meus, -a, -um, possess. pron. *my, mine.*
mihi, from **ego**.
miles, -ĭtis, subst. 3, m. *a soldier.*
millesimus, -a, -um, adj. *thousandth.*
millia, -ium, subst. pl. 3, n. *a thousand;* used also as pl. *thousands.*
minimē, adv. superl. *least, very little.*
mĭnor, minus, adj. compar. of **parvus**, *less.*
mĭnor, -ātus, v. tr. dep. *to threaten.*
mĭror, -ātus, v. tr. and intr. dep. *to wonder.*
misit, from **mitto**.
multus, -a, -um, adj. *much*, pl. *many.*

N.

nascor, natus, v. intr. dep. *to be born.*
natus, from **nascor**.
navĭgo, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. and intr. 1, *to sail.*
-nĕ, interrog. adv. always attached to some word in the sentence. In direct sentences it simply marks a question, in indirect it is translated *whether.*
nē, adv. *not.* **Ne . . quidem**, *not even.* Also conj. *lest, that not.*
nec, see **neque**.
necesse, n. adjective, found only in nominative and accusative, *necessary.*
negārunt, for **negāvērunt**, from **nego**.
nĕgo, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. and intr. 1, *to deny, say that . . not.*
nēmo, neminis, subst. 3, c. *no one, nobody.*
nĕque (contracted **nec**), conj. *and not, nor.* Neque . . neque, *neither . . nor.*
nescio, -ivi or -ii, -ītum, v. tr. 4, *to be ignorant.*
nĭger, -gra, -grum, adj. *black.*
nĭhil, subst. (undeclined), *nothing.* As adv. *not at all, in no way.*
nīl, contracted form of **nihil**.
nĭmis, adv. *too much.*
nĭsi, conj. *unless, except.*
nōlo, nolui, v. anomal. *to be unwilling.*
nomen, -ĭnis, subst. 3, n. *a name.*
non, adv. *not.*
nosco, nōvi, nōtum, v. tr. 3, *to become acquainted with.*
notus, *known*, from **nosco**.
num, interrog. adv. *whether.*
numĕrus, -i, subst. 2, m. *number.*
nunc, adv. *now.*
nunquam, adv. *never.*
nuntio, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. 1, *to announce.*

O.

oblatus, from **offero**.
obsto, obstĭti, obstātum, v. intr. 1, *to oppose, prevent.*
occīdo, -īdi, -īsum, v. tr. 3, *to kill.*
octingentesĭmus, -a, -um, adj. *eight hundredth.*
ōdi, defective verb tr. *to hate.*
offĕro, obtŭli, oblātum, v. tr, anomal. *to offer.*
omnis, -e, adj. *all, every.*
ŏpĕra, -ae, subst. 1, f. *toil, pains.*
ŏpīnio, -ionis, subst. 3, f. *opinion.*
ŏportet, -tuit, v. intr. 2. impers. *it is necessary.*
oppugno, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. 1, *to attack.*
optimus, -a, -um, adj. superl. of **bonus**, *best.*
opus, indeclinable subst. *need, want.*
Osīris, -is or -ĭdis, subst. 3, m. *Osiris*, an Egyptian deity.
ŏvis, -is, subst. 3, f. *a sheep.*

P.

pacem, from **pax**.
parco, peperci, parcĭtum or **parsum**, v. intr. 3, *to spare.*

părō, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. 1, *to prepare.*
pars, partis, subst. 3, f. *a part.*
Parthi, -ōrum, subst. pl. 2, m. *the Parthians.*
parvus, -a, -um, adj. *little, small.*
passus, -ūs, subst. 4, m. *a pace.* **mille passus**, or **millia passuum**, 1000 *paces, a mile.*
pastor, ōris, subst. 3, m. *a shepherd.*
păter, patris, subst. 3, m. *a father.*
pax, pācis, subst. 3, f. *peace.*
pecco, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr. 1, *to sin.*
pede, from **pes.**
pepercit, from **parco.**
per, prep. gov. acc. *through.*
perficio, -fēci, -fectum, v. tr. 3, *perform, accomplish.*
periculum, -i, subst. 2, n. *danger.*
permitto, -misi, -missum, v. tr. 3, *to entrust, permit.*
persuadeo, -suasi, -suasum, v. tr. 2, *to persuade.*
pervĕnio, -vēni, -ventum, v. intr. 4, *to come to, arrive.*
pervulgo, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. 1, *to publish, spread abroad.*
pes, pĕdis, subst. 3, m. *a foot.*
pĕto, petivi or **petii, petītum**, v. tr. 3, *to seek, ask, assail.*
plurimus, -a, -um, adj. superl. of **multus**, *most, very many.*
plus, pluris, adj. compar. of **multus**, *more.*
poenitet, -uit, v. tr. 2, impers. *it repents.*
Poeni, -ōrum, subst. pl. 2, m. *the Carthaginians.*
pollĭceor, pollĭcĭtus, v. tr. 2, dep. *to promise.*
Pompeius, -i, subst. 2, m. *Pompeius*, a celebrated Roman.
possum, potui, v. intr. anomal. *to be able.*
potior, potitus, v. tr. 4, dep. *to gain possession of.*
potui, from **possum.**
praeceptum, -i, subst. 2, n. *a precept.*
praeda, -ae, subst. 1, f. *booty, spoil.*
praeesset, *praefuisse*, } from **praesum.**
praelium, -i, subst. 2, n. *a battle.*
praemium, -i, subst. 2, n. *a reward.*
praesum, -fui, v. intr. anomal. *to be over.*
praetĕreo, -ivi or -ii, -ĭtum, v. tr. and intr. 4, *to pass by.*
pretium, -i, subst. 2, n. *a price.*
Priămus, -i, subst. 2, m. *Priam*, king of Troy.
prīmus, -a, -um, adj. *first.*
priusquam, conj. *before.*
pro, prep. gov. abl. *for, instead of.*
probus, -a, -um, adj. *good, honourable.*
proficiscor, profectus, v. intr. dep. 3, *to set out, march.*
profligo, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. 1, *to rout, subdue.*
progredior, progressus, v. intr. dep. 3, *to advance.*
proximus, -a, -um, adj. superl. *nearest, very near.*
pudet, -uit, v. 2, impers. *it shames.*
puer, -ĕri, subst. 2, m. *a boy.*
pugna, -ae, subst. 1, f. *a fight.*
pugno, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr. 1, *to fight.*

Q.

quadragesimus, -a, -um, adj. *fortieth.*
quae, from **qui** or **quis.**
quaero, quaesīvi, quaesītum, v. tr. 3, *to seek, ask.*
qualis, -e, adj. *of what sort.*
quàm, adv. *how, as, than.*
quam, from **qui** or **quis.**
quantus, -a, -um, adj. *how great.*
quartus, -a, -um, adj. *fourth.*
quas, **quem**, } from **qui** or **quis.**
qui, quae, quod, rel. pron. *who* or *which.*
qui, used as adjectival form of **quis.**
quia, conj. *because.*
quĭdem, adv. *indeed.* **ne—quidem**, *not even.*
quin, conj. *that not, but that.*
quinque, adj. indeclinable, *five.*
quis, interrog. pron. *who? which? what?* Also indef. pron. *any.*

quisque, quaeque, quidque or **quodque**, *each.*
quŏ, adv. *whither.*
quŏd, adv. *because.*
quod, from **qui.**
quominus, conj. *that not.*
quot, adj. indeclinable, *how many, as many as.*
quum, conj. *when.* **quum .. tum**, *on the one hand .. on the other hand.*

R.

recēdo, -cessi, -cessum, v. intr. 3, *to recede, retreat.*
redeo, -ivi or **-ii, -ĭtum**, v. intr. 4, *to return.*
redĭbit, from **redeo.**
redii, from **redeo.**
refero, rettŭli, relātum, v. tr. anomal. *to bring back, relate, refer.*
rĕfert, v. impers. and defect. *it concerns.*
refŭgio, -fūgi, -fŭgĭtum, v. intr. 3, *to fly back.*
rēgi, rēgis, } from **rex.**
regnâsse for **regnavisse**, from **regno.**
regno, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr. 1, *to reign.*
reiicio, -iēci, -iectum, v. tr. 3, *to throw back, reject.*
requiesco, -ēvi, -ētum, v. intr. 3, *to rest.*
res, rēi, subst. 5, f. *a thing.*
rex, rēgis, subst. 3, m. *a king.*
Rhenus, -i, subst. 2, m. *the Rhenus*, now the Rhine.
robur, robŏris, subst. 3, n. *strength.*
rogo, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. 1, *to ask.*
Roma, -ae, subst. 1, f. *Rome.*
Romani, -ōrum, subst. pl. 2, m. *the Romans.*

S.

sagacitas, -ātis, subst. 3, f. *sagacity, acuteness.*
sagitta, -ae, subst. 1, f. *an arrow.*
sanguis, -ŭĭnis, subst. 3, m. **blood.**
sapientia, -ae, subst. 1, f. *wisdom.*
scio, scivi, scitum, v. tr. 4, *to know.*
Scipio, -ōnis, subst. 3, m. *Scipio*, a celebrated Roman.
scrĭbo, scripsi, scriptum, v. tr. 3, *to write.*
se, sui, sibi, reflexive pron. *himself, herself, itself, oneself, themselves.*
secum for **cum se**, *with him, her*, etc.
sed, conj. *but.*
semper, adv. *always.*
senex, senis, adj. *old.*
senior, -us, comparat. of **senex.**
sensit, from **sentio.**
sententia, -ae, subst. 1, f. *an opinion.*
sentio, sensi, sensum, v. tr. 4, *to perceive.*
septuāgesimus, -a, -um, adj. *seventieth.*
sibi, from **se.**
simul, adv. *at the same time.* **simul atque**, *as soon as.*
sit, from **sum.**
solùm, adv. *only.*
spĕro, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. 1, *to hope.*
stella, -ae, subst. 1, f. *a star.*
stetit, from **sto.**
sto, stĕti, stātum, v. intr. 1, *to stand.*
stŭdeo, stŭdui, no sup. v. tr. and intr. 2, *to pay attention to.*
stultitia, -ae, subst. 1, f. *folly.*
stultus, -a, -um, adj. *foolish.*
suadeo, suasi, suasum, v. tr. and intr. 2, *to advise.*
sum, fui, auxiliary verb, *to be.*
summus, -a, -um, adj. *topmost, highest, greatest.*
sŭmus, sunt, } from **sum.**
superest, from **supersum.**
superior, -us, comparat. from **superus.**
supĕro, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. 1, *to surpass, overcome.*
supersum, -fui, v. intr. anomal. *to remain, survive.*
superus, -a, -um, adj. *high.*
suscipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, v. tr. 3, to undertake.

suus, -a, -um, possess. pron. *his, her, its, one's, theirs.*
Syracusae, -arum, subst. pl. 1, f. *Syracuse.*

T.

taedet, -uit, v. tr. 2, impers. *it wearies.*
talentum, -i, subst. 2, n. *a talent.*
talis, -e, adj. *of such a kind, such.*
tam, adv. *so much, so.*
tamen, conj. *nevertheless, yet, however.*
tantopere, adv. *so greatly.*
tantus, -a, -um, adj. *so great.* As adv. **tantŭm,** *so greatly,* and *only.*
taurus, -i, subst. 2, m. *a bull.*
te, from **tu.**
tempus, -pŏris, subst. 3, n. *time.*
terra, -ae, subst. 1, f. *the earth.*
tibi, from **tu.**
Tibur, -ŭris, subst. 3, n. *Tibur,* a town in Italy.
timeo, -ui, no sup. v. tr. 2, *to fear.*
tondeo, totondi, tonsum, v. tr. 2, *to shear.*
tot, adj. indeclinable, *so many.*
totus, -a, -um, adj. *the whole.*
trado, -didi, -dĭtum, v. tr. 3, *to deliver up, record.*
trans, prep. gov. acc. *across.*
trecenti, -ae, -a, adj. pl. *three hundred.*
trĕmo, trĕmui, no sup. v. intr. 3, *to tremble.*
tres, tria, adj. pl. *three.*
trĭbus, from **tres.**
Triptŏlĕmus, -i, subst. 2, m. *Triptolemus.*
Troianus, -a, -um, adj. *Trojan.*
tu, tui, pers. pron. *thou.*
tum, adv. *then.*
turris, -is, subst. 3, f. *a tower.*

U.

ubi, adv. *where.*
unus, -a, -um, adj. *one.*
urbs, urbis, subst. 3, f. *a city.*
usus, -ūs, subst. 4, m. *use, need.*
ut, adv. *as, when, how.* Also conj. *that, in order that.*
utor, usus, v. tr. dep. 3, *to use.*
utrum, interrog. adv. *whether.*

V.

vates, -is, subst. 3, c. *a prophet* or *prophetess.*
vĕnio, vēni, ventum, v. intr. 4, *to come.*
vĕreor, verĭtus, v. tr. dep. 2, *to fear.*
vetĕrum, from **vetus.**
vĕtus, veteris, adj. *old.*
via, -ae, subst. 1, f. *a way.*
vicem, vicis, vice, acc. genitive and abl. of a noun to which there is no nominative, *change.* Pl. **vices,** nom. and acc., **vicibus,** dat. and abl.
vicisset, from **vinco.**
victoria, -ae, subst. 1, f. *victory.*
victurum, victus, } from **vinco.**
video, vidi, visum, v. tr. 2, *to see.*
viginti, adj. indeclinable, *twenty.*
vinco, vīci, victum, v. tr. 3, *to conquer.*
vir, viri, subst. 2, m. *a man.*
vires, virium, subst. pl. of **vis,** *strength, force.*
virilis, -e, adj. *manly.*
virtus, -ūtis, subst. 3, f. *virtue, valour.*
vis, vis, subst. 3, f. *force, violence.* Pl. **vires.**
vita, -ae, subst. 1, f. *life.*
Vitellius, -i, subst. 2, m. *Vitellius,* a Roman Emperor.
vivo, vixi, victum, v. intr. 3, *to live.*
voco, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. 1, *to call.*
volo, volui, v. tr. anomal. *to wish.*
vos, vestrum, pl. of **tu,** *ye* or *you.*

X.

Xerxes, -is, subst. 3, m. *Xerxes,* king of Persia.

Z.

Zeno, -ōnis, subst. 3, m. *Zeno,* a philosopher.

August, 1874.

BOOKS

PRINTED AT

THE CLARENDON PRESS, OXFORD,

AND PUBLISHED FOR THE UNIVERSITY BY

MACMILLAN AND CO.,

29 & 30, BEDFORD STREET, COVENT GARDEN, LONDON.

LEXICONS, GRAMMARS, &c.

A Greek-English Lexicon, by Henry George Liddell, D.D., and Robert Scott, D.D. *Sixth Edition, Revised and Augmented.* 1870. 4to. *cloth*, 1*l.* 16*s.*

A Greek-English Lexicon, abridged from the above, chiefly for the use of Schools. *Fourteenth Edition, carefully revised throughout*, 1871. square 12mo. *cloth*, 7*s.* 6*d.*

A copious Greek-English Vocabulary, compiled from the best authorities. 1850. 24mo. *bound*, 3*s.*

Graecae Grammaticae Rudimenta in usum Scholarum. Auctore Carolo Wordsworth, D.C.L. *Seventeenth Edition*, 1870. 12mo. *bound*, 4*s.*

A Practical Introduction to Greek Accentuation, by H. W. Chandler, M.A. 1862. 8vo. *cloth*, 10*s.* 6*d.*

Scheller's Lexicon of the Latin Tongue, with the German explanations translated into English by J. E. Riddle, M.A. 1835. fol. *cloth*, 1*l.* 1*s.*

A Practical Grammar of the Sanskrit Language, arranged with reference to the Classical Languages of Europe, for the use of English Students, by Monier Williams, M.A. *Third Edition*, 1864. 8vo. *cloth*, 15*s.*

A Sanskrit English Dictionary, Etymologically and Philologically arranged, with special reference to Greek, Latin, German, Anglo-Saxon, English, and other cognate Indo-European Languages. By Monier Williams, M.A., Boden Professor of Sanskrit. 1872. 4to. *cloth*, 4*l.* 14*s.* 6*d.*

An Icelandic-English Dictionary. By the late R. Cleasby. Enlarged and completed by G. Vigfusson. With an Introduction, and Life of R. Cleasby, by G. Webbe Dasent, D.C.L. 4to. *cloth*, 3*l.* 7*s.*

GREEK AND LATIN CLASSICS.

Aeschylus: Tragoediae et Fragmenta, ex recensione Guil. Dindorfii. *Second Edition*, 1851. 8vo. *cloth*, 5*s.* 6*d.*

Sophocles: Tragoediae et Fragmenta, ex recensione et cum commentariis Guil. Dindorfii. *Third Edition*, 2 vols. 1860. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 1*l.* 1*s.*

Each Play separately, *limp*, 2*s.* 6*d.*

The Text alone, printed on writing paper, with large margin, royal 16mo. *cloth*, 8*s.*

The Text alone, square 16mo. *cloth*, 3*s.* 6*d.*

Each Play separately, *limp*, 6*d.*

Sophocles: Tragoediae et Fragmenta cum Annotatt. Guil. Dindorfii. Tomi II. 1849. 8vo. *cloth*, 10*s.*

The Text, Vol. I. 5*s.* 6*d.* The Notes, Vol. II. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Euripides: Tragoediae et Fragmenta, ex recensione Guil. Dindorfii. Tomi II. 1834. 8vo. *cloth*, 10*s.*

Aristophanes: Comoediae et Fragmenta, ex recensione Guil. Dindorfii. Tomi II. 1835. 8vo. *cloth*, 11*s.*

Aristoteles; ex recensione Immanuelis Bekkeri. Accedunt Indices Sylburgiani. Tomi XI. 1837. 8vo. *cloth*, 2*l.* 10*s.*

Each volume separately, 5*s.* 6*d.*

Catulli Veronensis Liber. Recognovit, apparatum criticum prolegomena appendices addidit, Robinson Ellis, A.M. 1867. 8vo. *cloth*, 16*s.*

Catulli Veronensis Carmina Selecta, secundum recognitionem Robinson Ellis, A.M. Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 3*s.* 6*d.*

Demosthenes: ex recensione Guil. Dindorfii. Tomi IV. 1846. 8vo. *cloth*, 1*l.* 1*s.*

Homerus: Ilias, ex rec. Guil. Dindorfii. 1856. 8vo. *cloth*, 5*s.* 6*d.*

Homerus: Odyssea, ex rec. Guil. Dindorfii. 1855. 8vo. *cloth*, 5*s.* 6*d.*

Plato: The Apology, with a revised Text and English Notes, and a Digest of Platonic Idioms, by James Riddell, M.A. 1867. 8vo. *cloth*, 8*s.* 6*d.*

Plato: Philebus, with a revised Text and English Notes, by Edward Poste, M.A. 1860. 8vo. *cloth*, 7*s.* 6*d.*

Plato: Sophistes and Politicus, with a revised Text and English Notes, by L. Campbell, M.A. 1866. 8vo. *cloth*, 18*s.*

Plato: Theaetetus, with a revised Text and English Notes, by L. Campbell, M.A. 1861. 8vo. *cloth*, 9*s.*

Plato: The Dialogues, translated into English, with Analyses and Introductions. By B. Jowett, M.A., Master of Balliol College, and Regius Professor of Greek. 4 vols. 1871. 8vo. *cloth*, 3*l.* 6*s.*

THE HOLY SCRIPTURES.

The Holy Bible in the Earliest English Versions, made from the Latin Vulgate by John Wycliffe and his followers: edited by the Rev. J. Forshall and Sir F. Madden. 4 vols. 1850. royal 4to. *cloth*, 3*l.* 3*s.*

The Holy Bible: an exact reprint, page for page, of the Authorized Version published in the year 1611. Demy 4to. *half bound*, 1*l.* 1*s.*

Vetus Testamentum Graece secundum exemplar Vaticanum Romae editum. Accedit potior varietas Codicis Alexandrini. Tomi III. 1848. 18mo. *cloth*, 14*s.*

Novum Testamentum Graece. Edidit Carolus Lloyd, S.T.P.R., necnon Episcopus Oxoniensis. 1869. 18mo. *cloth*, 3*s.*

The same on writing paper, small 4to. *cloth*, 10*s.* 6*d.*

Novum Testamentum Graece juxta Exemplar Millianum. 1868. 18mo. *cloth*, 2*s.* 6*d.*

The same on writing paper, small 4to. *cloth*, 6*s.* 6*d.*

Evangelia Sacra Graece. 1870. fcap. 8vo. *limp*, 1*s.* 6*d.*

ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY, &c.

Baedae Historia Ecclesiastica. Edited, with English Notes, by G. H. Moberly, M.A. 1869. crown 8vo. *cloth*, 10*s.* 6*d.*

Bingham's Antiquities of the Christian Church, and other Works. 10 vols. 1855. 8vo. *cloth*. *Price reduced from* 5*l.* 5*s.* *to* 3*l.* 3*s.*

Eusebius' Ecclesiastical History, according to the Text of Burton. With an Introduction by William Bright, D.D., Regius Professor of Ecclesiastical History, Oxford. Crown 8vo. *cloth*, 8*s.* 6*d.*

The Orations of St. Athanasius against the Arians. With an Account of his Life. By William Bright, D.D., Regius Professor of Ecclesiastical History, Oxford. Crown 8vo. *cloth*, 9*s.*

Patrum Apostolicorum, S. Clementis Romani, S. Ignatii, S. Polycarpi, quae supersunt. Edidit Guil. Jacobson, S.T.P.R. Tomi II. *Fourth Edition*, 1863. 8vo. *cloth*, 1*l.* 1*s.*

ENGLISH THEOLOGY.

Butler's Works, with an Index to the Analogy. 2 vols. 1849. 8vo. *cloth*, 11*s.*

Greswell's Harmonia Evangelica. *Fifth Edition*, 1856. 8vo. *cloth*, 9*s.* 6*d.*

Hooker's Works, with his Life by Walton, arranged by John Keble, M.A. *Fifth Edition*, 3 vols. 1865. 8vo. *cloth*, 1*l.* 11*s.* 6*d.*

Hooker's Works; the text as arranged by John Keble, M.A. 2 vols. 1865. 8vo. *cloth*, 11*s.*

Pearson's Exposition of the Creed. Revised and corrected by E. Burton, D.D. *Fifth Edition*, 1864. 8vo. *cloth*, 10*s.* 6*d.*

Waterland's Review of the Doctrine of the Eucharist, with a Preface by the present Bishop of London. 1868. crown 8vo. *cloth*, 6*s.* 6*d.*

ENGLISH HISTORY.

Clarendon's (Edw. Earl of) History of the Rebellion and Civil Wars in England. To which are subjoined the Notes of Bishop Warburton. 7 vols. 1849. medium 8vo. *cloth*, 2*l.* 10*s.*

Clarendon's (Edw. Earl of) History of the Rebellion and Civil Wars in England. 7 vols. 1839. 18mo. *cloth*, 1*l.* 1*s.*

Freeman's (E. A.) History of the Norman Conquest of England: its Causes and Results. Vols. I. and II. 8vo. *New Edition, with Index*, 1*l.* 16*s.*

Vol. III. The Reign of Harold and the Interregnum. 1869. 8vo. *cloth*, 1*l.* 1*s.*
Vol. IV. The Reign of William. 1871. 8vo. *cloth*, 1*l.* 1*s.*

Rogers's History of Agriculture and Prices in England, A.D. 1259—1400. 2 vols. 1866. 8vo. *cloth*, 2*l.* 2*s.*

MATHEMATICS, PHYSICAL SCIENCE, &c.

An Account of Vesuvius, by John Phillips, M.A., F.R.S., Professor of Geology, Oxford. 1869. Crown 8vo. *cloth*, 10*s.* 6*d.*

Treatise on Infinitesimal Calculus. By Bartholomew Price, M.A., F.R.S., Professor of Natural Philosophy, Oxford.

Vol. I. Differential Calculus. *Second Edition*, 1858. 8vo. *cloth*, 14*s.* 6*d.*

Vol. II. Integral Calculus, Calculus of Variations, and Differential Equations. *Second Edition*, 1865. 8vo. *cloth*, 18*s.*

Vol. III. Statics, including Attractions; Dynamics of a Material Particle. *Second Edition*, 1868. 8vo. *cloth*, 16*s.*

Vol. IV. Dynamics of Material Systems; together with a Chapter on Theoretical Dynamics, by W. F. Donkin, M.A., F.R.S. 1862. 8vo. *cloth*, 16*s.*

MISCELLANEOUS.

A Course of Lectures on Art, delivered before the University of Oxford. By John Ruskin, M.A., Slade Professor of Fine Art. 1870. 8vo. *cloth*, 6*s.*

A Critical Account of the Drawings by Michel Angelo and Raffaello in the University Galleries, Oxford. By J. C. Robinson, F.S.A. 1870. Crown 8vo. *cloth*, 4*s.*

Bacon's Novum Organum, edited, with English Notes, by G. W. Kitchin, M.A. 1855. 8vo. *cloth*, 9*s.* 6*d.*

Bacon's Novum Organum, translated by G. W. Kitchin, M.A. 1855. 8vo. *cloth*, 9*s.* 6*d.*

Smith's Wealth of Nations. A new Edition, with Notes, by J. E. Thorold Rogers, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo. *cloth*, 21*s.*

The Student's Handbook to the University and Colleges of Oxford. Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 2*s.* 6*d.*

Clarendon Press Series.

The Delegates of the Clarendon Press having undertaken the publication of a series of works, chiefly educational, and entitled the **Clarendon Press Series**, have published, or have in preparation, the following.

Those to which prices are attached are already published; the others are in preparation.

I. GREEK AND LATIN CLASSICS, &c.

An Elementary Latin Grammar. By John B. Allen, M.A., formerly Scholar of New College, Oxford. Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth.*

A First Latin Reader. By T. J. Nunns, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth.*

A Greek Primer, in English, for the use of beginners. By the Right Rev. Charles Wordsworth, D.C.L., Bishop of St. Andrews. *Fourth Edition.* Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 1*s.* 6*d.*

Greek Verbs, Irregular and Defective; their forms, meaning, and quantity; embracing all the Tenses used by Greek writers, with reference to the passages in which they are found. By W. Veitch. *New Edition.* Crown 8vo. *cloth*, 10*s.* 6*d.*

The Elements of Greek Accentuation (for Schools): abridged from his larger work by H. W. Chandler, M.A., Waynflete Professor of Moral and Metaphysical Philosophy, Oxford. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 2*s.* 6*d.*

The Orations of Demosthenes and Aeschines on the Crown. With Introductory Essays and Notes. By G. A. Simcox, M.A., and W. H. Simcox, M.A. Demy 8vo. *cloth*, 12*s.*

Aristotle's Politics. By W. L. Newman, M.A., Fellow of Balliol College, Oxford.

Arrian. Selections (for Schools). With Notes. By J. S. Phillpotts, B.C.L., Assistant Master in Rugby School.

The Golden Treasury of Ancient Greek Poetry; being a Collection of the finest passages in the Greek Classic Poets, with Introductory Notices and Notes. By R. S. Wright, M.A., Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 8*s.* 6*d.*

A Golden Treasury of Greek Prose; being a Collection of the finest passages in the principal Greek Prose Writers, with Introductory Notices and Notes. By R. S. Wright, M.A., Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford; and J. E. L. Shadwell, M.A., Senior Student of Christ Church. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 4*s.* 6*d.*

Homer. Iliad. By D. B. Monro, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Oriel College, Oxford.

Also a smaller edition for Schools.

Homer. Odyssey, Books I–XII (for Schools). By W. W. Merry, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of Lincoln College, Oxford. *Third Edition.* Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 4*s.* 6*d.*

Homer. Odyssey, Books I–XII. By W. W. Merry, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of Lincoln College, Oxford; and the late James Riddell, M.A., Fellow of Balliol College, Oxford.

Homer. Odyssey, Books XIII–XXIV. By Robinson Ellis, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford.

Plato. Selections (for Schools). With Notes. By B. Jowett, M.A., Regius Professor of Greek; and J. Purves, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of Balliol College, Oxford.

Sophocles. The Plays and Fragments. With English Notes and Introductions. By Lewis Campbell, M.A., Professor of Greek, St. Andrews, formerly Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford.

Vol. I. Oedipus Tyrannus. Oedipus Coloneus. Antigone. 8vo. *cloth*, 14*s.*

Sophocles. The Text of the Seven Plays. For the use of Students in the University of Oxford. By the same Editor. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 4*s.* 6*d.*

Sophocles. In Single Plays, with English Notes, &c. By Lewis Campbell, M.A., Professor of Greek, St. Andrews, and Evelyn Abbott, M.A., of Balliol College, Oxford.

Oedipus Tyrannus. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 1*s.* 9*d.*
Oedipus Coloneus. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 1*s.* 9*d.* *Just Published.*
Antigone. *In the Press.*
The others to follow at intervals of six months.

Sophocles. Oedipus Rex: Dindorf's Text, with Notes by the Ven. Archdeacon Basil Jones. Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 1*s.* 6*d.*

Theocritus (for Schools). With Notes. By H. Snow, M.A., Assistant Master at Eton College. *Second Edition.* Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 4*s.* 6*d.*

Xenophon. Selections (for Schools). With Notes and Maps. By J. S. Phillpotts, B.C.L., Assistant Master in Rugby School.

Part I. *Second Edition.* Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 3*s.* 6*d.*
Part II. By the same Editor. *Preparing.*

Caesar. The Commentaries (for Schools). Part I. The Gallic War, with Notes and Maps, &c. By Charles E. Moberly, M.A., Assistant Master in Rugby School; formerly Scholar of Balliol College, Oxford. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 4*s.* 6*d.*

Part II. The Civil War. Book I. By the same Editor. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 2*s.*

Cicero's Philippic Orations. With Notes. By J. R. King, M.A., formerly Fellow and Tutor of Merton College, Oxford. Demy 8vo. *cloth*, 10*s.* 6*d.*

Cicero. Select Letters. With English Introductions, Notes, and Appendices. By Albert Watson, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of Brasenose College, Oxford. Demy 8vo. *cloth*, 18*s.*

Cicero. Select Letters (Text). By the same Editor. Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 3*s.* 6*d.* *Just Published.*

Cicero. Select Letters (for Schools). With Notes. By the late C. E. Prichard, M.A., and E. R. Bernard, M.A., Fellow of Magdalen College, Oxford. Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 3*s.*

Cicero pro Cluentio. With Introduction and Notes. By W. Ramsay, M.A. Edited by G. G. Ramsay, M.A., Professor of Humanity, Glasgow. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 3*s.* 6*d.*

Cicero de Oratore. With Introduction and Notes. By A. S. Wilkins, M.A., Professor of Latin, Owens College, Manchester.

Cicero. Selection of interesting and descriptive passages. With Notes. By Henry Walford, M.A., Wadham College, Oxford, Assistant Master at Haileybury College. In three Parts. *Third Edition.* Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 4*s.* 6*d.*

Each Part separately, in limp cloth, 1*s.* 6*d.*

Part I. Anecdotes from Grecian and Roman History.
Part II. Omens and Dreams: Beauties of Nature.
Part III. Rome's Rule of her Provinces.

Cornelius Nepos. With Notes, by Oscar Browning, M.A., Fellow of King's College, Cambridge, and Assistant Master at Eton College. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 2*s.* 6*d.*

Horace. With Introductions and Notes. By Edward C. Wickham, M.A., Head Master of Wellington College.

Vol. I. The Odes, Carmen Seculare, and Epodes. Demy 8vo. *cloth*, 12*s.* *Just Published.*

Also a small edition for Schools.

Livy, Books I–X. By J. R. Seeley, M.A., Fellow of Christ's College, and Regius Professor of Modern History, Cambridge. Book I. Demy 8vo. *cloth*, 6*s.*

Also a small edition for Schools.

Livy. Selections (for Schools). With Notes and Maps. By H. Lee Warner, M.A., Assistant Master at Rugby School. *In Parts.*

Part I. The Caudine Disaster. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 1*s.* 6*d.*
Part II. Hannibal's Campaign in Italy. Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 1*s.* 6*d.*

Ovid. Selections for the use of Schools. With Introductions and Notes, and an Appendix on the Roman Calendar. By W. Ramsay, M.A. Edited by G. G. Ramsay, M.A., Professor of Humanity, Glasgow. *Second Edition.* Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 5*s.* 6*d.*

Persius. The Satires. With a Translation and Commentary. By John Conington, M.A., late Corpus Professor of Latin in the University of Oxford. Edited by H. Nettleship, M.A. 8vo. *cloth*, 7*s.* 6*d.*

Pliny. Select Letters (for Schools). With Notes. By the late C. E. Prichard, M.A., formerly Fellow of Balliol College, Oxford, and E. R. Bernard, M.A., Fellow of Magdalen College, Oxford. Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 3*s.*

Fragments and Specimens of Early Latin. With Introduction, Notes, and Illustrations. By John Wordsworth, M.A., Brasenose College, Oxford. *In the Press.*

Selections from the less known Latin Poets. By North Pinder, M.A., formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford. Demy 8vo. *cloth*, 15*s.*

Passages for Translation into Latin. For the use of Passmen and others. Selected by J. Y. Sargent, M.A., Fellow of Magdalen College, Oxford. *Third Edition.* Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 2*s.* 6*d.*

II. MENTAL AND MORAL PHILOSOPHY.

The Elements of Deductive Logic, designed mainly for the use of Junior Students in the Universities. By T. Fowler, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Lincoln College, Oxford. *Fifth Edition,* with a Collection of Examples. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth,* 3*s.* 6*d.*

The Elements of Inductive Logic, designed mainly for the use of Students in the Universities. By the same Author. *Second Edition.* Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth,* 6*s.*

A Manual of Political Economy, for the use of Schools. By J. E. Thorold Rogers, M.A., formerly Professor of Political Economy, Oxford. *Second Edition.* Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth,* 4*s.* 6*d.*

Principles of Morals. By J. M. Wilson, B.D., and T. Fowler, M.A. *Preparing.*

III. MATHEMATICS, &c.

Figures made Easy: a first Arithmetic Book. (Introductory to 'The Scholar's Arithmetic.') By Lewis Hensley, M.A., formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. *cloth,* 6*d.*

Answers to the Examples in Figures made Easy. By the same Author. Crown 8vo. *cloth,* 1*s.*

The Scholar's Arithmetic. By the same Author. Crown 8vo. *cloth,* 4*s.* 6*d.*

Book-keeping. By R. G. C. Hamilton, Accountant to the Board of Trade, and John Ball (of the Firm of Messrs. Quilter, Ball, & Co.). *Third Edition.* Ext. fcap. 8vo. *limp cloth,* 1*s.* 6*d.*

A Course of Lectures on Pure Geometry. By Henry J. Stephen Smith, M.A., F.R.S., Fellow of Corpus Christi College, and Savilian Professor of Geometry in the University of Oxford.

An Elementary Treatise on Quaternions. By P. G. Tait, M.A. *Second Edition.* Demy 8vo. *cloth,* 14*s.*

Acoustics. By W. F. Donkin, M.A., F.R.S., Savilian Professor of Astronomy, Oxford. Crown 8vo. *cloth,* 7*s.* 6*d.*

A Treatise on Electricity and Magnetism. By J. Clerk Maxwell, M.A., F.R.S., Professor of Experimental Physics in the University of Cambridge. 2 vols. Demy 8vo. *cloth,* 1*l.* 11*s.* 6*d.*

An Elementary Treatise on the same subject. By the same Author. *Preparing.*

A Series of Elementary Works is being arranged, and will shortly be announced.

IV. HISTORY.

A Constitutional History of England. By W. Stubbs, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, Oxford. Vol. I. Crown 8vo. *cloth,* 12*s.*

Select Charters and other Illustrations of English Constitutional History from the Earliest Times to the reign of Edward I. By the same Author. *Second Edition.* Crown 8vo. *cloth,* 8*s.* 6*d.*

Genealogical Tables illustrative of Modern History. By H. B. George, M.A., Fellow of New College. Small 4to. *cloth*, 12*s*.

A History of France, down to the year 1453. With numerous Maps, Plans, and Tables. By G. W. Kitchin, M.A., formerly Censor of Christ Church. Crown 8vo. *cloth*, 10*s*. 6*d*.

A Manual of Ancient History. By George Rawlinson, M.A., Camden Professor of Ancient History, formerly Fellow of Exeter College, Oxford. Demy 8vo. *cloth*, 14*s*.

A History of Germany and of the Empire, down to the close of the Middle Ages. By J. Bryce, D.C.L., Regius Professor of Civil Law, Oxford.

A History of Germany, from the Reformation. By Adolphus W. Ward, M.A., Fellow of St. Peter's College, Cambridge, Professor of History, Owens College, Manchester.

A History of British India. By S. J. Owen, M.A., Reader in History, Christ Church, and Teacher of Indian Law and History in the University of Oxford.

A History of Greece. By E. A. Freeman, M.A., formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford.

V. LAW.

Elements of Law considered with reference to Principles of General Jurisprudence. By William Markby, M.A., Judge of the High Court of Judicature, Calcutta. Crown 8vo. *cloth*, 6*s*. 6*d*.

Gaii Institutionum Juris Civilis Commentarii Quatuor; or, Elements of Roman Law by Gaius. With a Translation and Commentary. By Edward Poste, M.A., Barrister-at-Law, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 8vo. *cloth*, 16*s*.

The Institutes of Justinian, edited as a Recension of the Institutes of Gaius. By Thomas Erskine Holland, B.C.L., Vinerian Reader in Law, and formerly Fellow of Exeter College, Oxford. Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 5*s*.

The Elements of Jurisprudence. By the same Editor.

Select Titles from the Digest of Justinian. By T. E. Holland, B.C.L., formerly Fellow of Exeter College, Oxford, and C. L. Shadwell, B.C.L., Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. *In Parts.*

Part I. **Introductory Titles.** 8vo. *sewed*, 2*s*. 6*d*.

Part II. **Family Law.** 8vo. *sewed*, 1*s*.

Authorities Illustrative of the History of the English Law of Real Property. By Kenelm E. Digby, M.A., formerly Fellow of Corpus Christi College, Oxford. *In the Press.*

VI. PHYSICAL SCIENCE.

Natural Philosophy. In four volumes. By Sir W. Thomson, LL.D., D.C.L., F.R.S., Professor of Natural Philosophy, Glasgow; and P. G. Tait, M.A., Professor of Natural Philosophy, Edinburgh; formerly Fellows of St. Peter's College, Cambridge. Vol. I. 8vo. *cloth*, 1*l*. 5*s*.

Elements of Natural Philosophy. By the same Authors. Part I. 8vo. *cloth*, 9*s*.

Descriptive Astronomy. A Handbook for the General Reader, and also for practical Observatory work. With 224 illustrations and numerous tables. By G. F. Chambers, F.R.A.S., Barrister-at-Law. Demy 8vo. 856 pp., *cloth*, 1*l.* 1*s.*

Chemistry for Students. By A. W. Williamson, Phil. Doc., F.R.S., Professor of Chemistry, University College, London. *A new Edition, with Solutions.* Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 8*s.* 6*d.*

A Treatise on Heat, with numerous Woodcuts and Diagrams. By Balfour Stewart, LL.D., F.R.S., Professor of Physics, Owens College, Manchester. *Second Edition.* Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 7*s.* 6*d.*

Forms of Animal Life. By G. Rolleston, M.D., F.R.S., Linacre Professor of Physiology, Oxford. Illustrated by Descriptions and Drawings of Dissections. Demy 8vo. *cloth*, 16*s.*

Exercises in Practical Chemistry. By A. G. Vernon Harcourt, M.A., F.R.S., Senior Student of Christ Church, and Lee's Reader in Chemistry; and H. G. Madan, M.A., Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford.

Series I. Qualitative Exercises. *Second Edition.* Crown 8vo. *cloth*, 7*s.* 6*d.*

Series II. Quantitative Exercises.

Geology of Oxford and the Valley of the Thames. By John Phillips, M.A., F.R.S., Professor of Geology, Oxford. 8vo. *cloth*, 1*l.* 1*s.*

Crystallography. By M. H. N. Story-Maskelyne, M.A., Professor of Mineralogy, Oxford; and Deputy Keeper in the Department of Minerals, British Museum.

Mineralogy. By the same Author.

Physiological Physics. By G. Griffith, M.A., Jesus College, Oxford, Assistant Secretary to the British Association, and Natural Science Master at Harrow School.

VII. ENGLISH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE.

A First Reading Book. By Marie Eichens of Berlin; and edited by Anne J. Clough. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *stiff covers*, 4*d.*

Oxford Reading Book, Part I. For Little Children. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *stiff covers*, 6*d.*

Oxford Reading Book, Part II. For Junior Classes. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *stiff covers*, 6*d.*

On the Principles of Grammar. By E. Thring, M.A., Head Master of Uppingham School. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 4*s.* 6*d.*

Grammatical Analysis, designed to serve as an Exercise and Composition Book in the English Language. By E. Thring, M.A., Head Master of Uppingham School. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 3*s.* 6*d.*

An English Grammar and Reading Book, for Lower Forms in Classical Schools. By O. W. Tancock, M.A., Assistant Master of Sherborne School. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 3*s.* 6*d.*

Specimens of Early English. A New and Revised Edition. With Introduction, Notes, and Glossarial Index. By R. Morris, LL.D. and W. W. Skeat, M.A.
Part I. *In the Press.*
Part II. From Robert of Gloucester to Gower (A.D. 1298 to A.D. 1393). Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth, 7s. 6d.*

Specimens of English Literature, from the 'Ploughmans Crede' to the 'Shepheardes Calender' (A.D. 1394 to A.D. 1579). With Introduction, Notes, and Glossarial Index. By W. W. Skeat, M.A. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth, 7s. 6d.*

The Vision of William concerning Piers the Plowman, by William Langland. Edited, with Notes, by W. W. Skeat, M.A., formerly Fellow of Christ's College, Cambridge. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth, 4s. 6d.*

Chaucer. The Prioresses Tale; Sir Thopas; The Monkes Tale; The Clerkes Tale; The Squieres Tale, &c. Edited by W. W. Skeat, M.A., Editor of Piers the Plowman, &c.. &c. *Nearly ready.*

Milton. The Areopagitica. With Notes. By J. W. Hales, M.A., late Fellow of Christ's College, Cambridge. Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth, 3s.*

The Philology of the English Tongue. By J. Earle, M.A., formerly Fellow of Oriel College, and Professor of Anglo-Saxon, Oxford. *Second Edition.* Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth, 7s. 6d.*

Typical Selections from the best English Authors from the Sixteenth to the Nineteenth Century, (to serve as a higher Reading Book,) with Introductory Notices and Notes, being a Contribution towards a History of English Literature. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth, 4s. 6d.*

See also XII. below for other English Classics.

VIII. FRENCH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE.

Brachet's Historical Grammar of the French Language. Translated by G. W. Kitchin, M.A. *Second Edition.* Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth, 3s. 6d.*

An Etymological Dictionary of the French Language, with a Preface on the Principles of French Etymology. By A. Brachet. Translated by G. W. Kitchin, M.A. Crown 8vo. *cloth, 10s. 6d.*

Corneille's Cinna, and **Molière's** Les Femmes Savantes. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by Gustave Masson. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth, 2s. 6d.*

Racine's Andromaque, and **Corneille's** Le Menteur. With Louis Racine's Life of his Father. By the same Editor. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth, 2s. 6d.*

Molière's Les Fourberies de Scapin, and **Racine's** Athalie. With Voltaire's Life of Molière. By the same Editor. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth, 2s. 6d.*

Selections from the Correspondence of **Madame de Sévigné** and her chief Contemporaries. Intended more especially for Girls' Schools. By the same Editor. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth, 3s.*

Voyage autour de ma Chambre, by **Xavier de Maistre;** Ourika by MADAME DE DURAS; La Dot de Suzette by FIEVÉE; Les Jumeaux de l'Hôtel Corneille, by EDMOND ABOUT; Mésaventures d'un Écolier, by RODOLPHE TÖPFFER. By the same Editor. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth, 2s. 6d.*

IX. GERMAN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE.

Goethe's Egmont. With a Life of Goethe, &c. By C. A. Buchheim, Phil. Doc., Professor in King's College, London; sometime Examiner to the University of London. Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 3*s*.

Schiller's Wilhelm Tell. With a Life of Schiller; an historical and critical Introduction, Arguments, and a complete Commentary. By the same Editor. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 3*s*. 6*d*.

Lessing's Minna von Barnhelm. A Comedy. With a Life of Lessing, Critical Analysis, Complete Commentary, &c. By the same Editor. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 3*s*. 6*d*.

X. ART, &c.

A Handbook of Pictorial Art. By R. St. J. Tyrwhitt, M.A., formerly Student and Tutor of Christ Church, Oxford. With coloured Illustrations, Photographs, and a chapter on Perspective by A. Macdonald. 8vo. *half morocco*, 18*s*.

A Treatise on Harmony. By Sir F. A. Gore Ouseley, Bart., M.A., Mus. Doc., Professor of Music in the University of Oxford. 4to. *cloth*, 10*s*.

A Treatise on Counterpoint, Canon, and Fugue, based upon that of Cherubini. By the same Author. 4to. *cloth*, 16*s*.

A Treatise on Form in Music, and General Composition. By the same Author. *Preparing.*

A Music Primer for Schools. By J. Troutbeck, M.A., and R. F. Dale, M.A., B. Mus. Crown 8vo. *cloth*, 2*s*. 6*d*.

The Cultivation of the Speaking Voice. By John Hullah. Crown 8vo. *cloth*, 3*s*. 6*d*.

XI. MISCELLANEOUS.

Dante. Selections from the Inferno. With Introduction and Notes. By H. B. Cotterill, B.A., Assistant Master in Haileybury College. Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 4*s*. 6*d*. *Just Published.*

A Treatise on the Use of the Tenses in Hebrew. By S. R. Driver, M.A., Fellow of New College. Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 6*s*. 6*d*.

Outlines of Textual Criticism applied to the New Testament. By C. E. Hammond, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Exeter College, Oxford. Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 3*s*. 6*d*.

The Modern Greek Language in its relation to Ancient Greek. By E. M. Geldart, B.A., formerly Scholar of Balliol College, Oxford. Extr. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 4*s*. 6*d*.

A System of Physical Education: Theoretical and Practical. By Archibald Maclaren, The Gymnasium, Oxford. Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 7*s*. 6*d*.

XII. A SERIES OF ENGLISH CLASSICS.

Designed to meet the wants of Students in English Literature: under the superintendence of the Rev. J. S. BREWER, M.A., *of Queen's College, Oxford, and Professor of English Literature at King's College, London.*

THERE are two dangers to which the student of English Literature is exposed at the outset of his task;—his reading is apt to be too narrow or too diffuse.

Out of the vast number of authors set before him in books professing to deal with this subject he knows not which to select: he thinks he must read a little of all; he soon abandons so hopeless an attempt; he ends by contenting himself with second-hand information; and professing to study English Literature, he fails to master a single English author. On the other hand, by confining his attention to one or two writers, or to one special period of English Literature, the student narrows his view of it; he fails to grasp the subject as a whole; and in so doing misses one of the chief objects of his study.

How may these errors be avoided? How may minute reading be combined with comprehensiveness of view?

In the hope of furnishing an answer to these questions the Delegates of the Press, acting upon the advice and experience of Professor Brewer, have determined to issue a series of small volumes, which shall embrace, in a convenient form and at a low price, the general extent of English Literature, as represented in its masterpieces at successive epochs. It is thought that the student, by confining himself, in the first instance, to those authors who are most worthy of his attention, will be saved from the dangers of hasty and indiscriminate reading. By adopting the course thus marked out for him, he will become familiar with the productions of the greatest minds in English Literature; and should he never be able to pursue the subject

beyond the limits here prescribed, he will have laid the foundation of accurate habits of thought and judgment, which cannot fail of being serviceable to him hereafter.

The authors and works selected are such as will best serve to illustrate English Literature in its *historical* aspect. As 'the eye of history,' without which history cannot be understood, the literature of a nation is the clearest and most intelligible record of its life. Its thoughts and its emotions, its graver and its less serious modes, its progress, or its degeneracy, are told by its best authors in their best words. This view of the subject will suggest the safest rules for the study of it.

With one exception all writers before the Reformation are excluded from the Series. However great may be the value of literature before that epoch, it is not completely national. For it had no common organ of language; it addressed itself to special classes; it dealt mainly with special subjects. Again; of writers who flourished after the Reformation, who were popular in their day, and reflected the manners and sentiments of their age, the larger part by far must be excluded from our list. Common sense tells us that if young persons, who have but a limited time at their disposal, read Marlowe or Greene, Burton, Hakewill or Du Bartas, Shakespeare, Bacon, and Milton will be comparatively neglected.

Keeping, then, to the best authors in each epoch—and here popular estimation is a safe guide—the student will find the following list of writers amply sufficient for his purpose: Chaucer, Spenser, Hooker, Shakespeare, Bacon, Milton, Dryden, Bunyan, Pope, Johnson, Burke, and Cowper. In other words, Chaucer is the exponent of the Middle Ages in England; Spenser of the Reformation and the Tudors; Hooker of the latter years of Elizabeth; Shakespeare and Bacon of the transition from Tudor to Stuart; Milton of Charles I and the Commonwealth; Dryden and Bunyan of the Restoration; Pope of Anne and the House

of Hanover; Johnson, Burke, and Cowper of the reign of George III to the close of the last century.

The list could be easily enlarged; the names of Jeremy Taylor, Clarendon, Hobbes, Locke, Swift, Addison, Goldsmith, and others are omitted. But in so wide a field, the difficulty is to keep the series from becoming unwieldy, without diminishing its comprehensiveness. Hereafter, should the plan prove to be useful, some of the masterpieces of the authors just mentioned may be added to the list.

The task of selection is not yet finished. For purposes of education, it would neither be possible, nor, if possible, desirable, to place in the hands of students the whole of the works of the authors we have chosen. We must set before them only the masterpieces of literature, and their studies must be directed, not only to the greatest minds, but to their choicest productions. These are to be read again and again, separately and in combination. Their purport, form, language, bearing on the times, must be minutely studied, till the student begins to recognise the full value of each work both in itself and in its relations to those that go before and those that follow it.

It is especially hoped that this Series may prove useful to Ladies' Schools and Middle Class Schools; in which English Literature must always be a leading subject of instruction.

A General Introduction to the Series. By Professor Brewer, M.A.

1. **Chaucer.** The Prologue to the Canterbury Tales; The Knightes Tale; The Nonne Prestes Tale. Edited by R. Morris Editor for the Early English Text Society, &c., &c. *Third Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 2*s.* 6*d.*

2. **Spenser's Faery Queene.** Books I and II. Designed chiefly for the use of Schools. With Introduction, Notes, and Glossary. By G. W. Kitchin, M.A., formerly Censor of Christ Church.
   Book I. *Fifth Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 2*s.* 6*d.*
   Book II. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 2*s.* 6*d.*

3. **Hooker.** Ecclesiastical Polity, Book I. Edited by R. W. Church, M.A., Dean of St. Paul's, formerly Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 2*s.*

4. **Shakespeare.** Select Plays. Edited by W. G. Clark, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge; and W. Aldis Wright, M.A., Trinity College, Cambridge. Extra fcap. 8vo. *stiff covers.*

I. The Merchant of Venice. 1*s.*

II. Richard the Second. 1*s.* 6*d.*

III. Macbeth. 1*s.* 6*d.*

IV. Hamlet. 2*s.*

V. The Tempest. By W. Aldis Wright, M.A. 1*s.* 6*d.* *Just Published.*

5. **Bacon.** Advancement of Learning. Edited by W. Aldis Wright, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 4*s.* 6*d.*

6. **Milton.** Poems. Edited by R. C. Browne, M.A., and Associate of King's College, London. 2 vols. *Second Edition.* Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 6*s.* 6*d.*

Sold separately, Vol. I. 4*s.*, Vol. II. 3*s.*

7. **Dryden.** Stanzas on the Death of Oliver Cromwell; Astraea Redux; Annus Mirabilis; Absalom and Achitophel; Religio Laici; The Hind and the Panther. Edited by W. D. Christie, M.A., Trinity College, Cambridge. Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 3*s.* 6*d.*

8. **Bunyan.** Grace Abounding; The Pilgrim's Progress. Edited by E. Venables, M.A., Canon of Lincoln.

9. **Pope.** With Introduction and Notes. By Mark Pattison, B.D., Rector of Lincoln College, Oxford.

I. Essay on Man. *Second Edition.* Extra fcap. 8vo. *stiff covers*, 1*s.* 6*d.*

II. Satires and Epistles. Extra fcap. 8vo. *stiff covers*, 2*s.*

10. **Johnson.** Rasselas; Lives of Pope and Dryden. Edited by C. H. O. Daniel, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Worcester College, Oxford.

11. **Burke.** Thoughts on the Present Discontents; the Two Speeches on America; Reflections on the French Revolution. By E. J. Payne, M.A., Fellow of University College, Oxford. Vol. I. Extra fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 4*s.* 6*d.*

Vol. II. *In the Press.*

12. **Cowper.** The Task, with Tirocinium, and some of the Minor Poems. Vol. II. Edited by H. T. Griffith, B.A., Pembroke College, Oxford. Ext. fcap. 8vo. *cloth*, 3*s.*

Vol. I. *In the Press.*

Published for the University by

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.

The DELEGATES OF THE PRESS *invite suggestions and advice from all persons interested in education; and will be thankful for hints, &c., addressed to either the* Rev. G. W. KITCHIN, *St. Giles's Road East, Oxford, or the* SECRETARY TO THE DELEGATES, *Clarendon Press, Oxford.*